



Connect+ Series

Mailing & Shipping Systems
Connect+ Series 500W-3000

Operator Guide

US English Edition SV62250 Rev. M April 22, 2016 SV62250 Rev. M

©2016 Pitney Bowes Inc.

All rights reserved. The content of this online manual may not be reproduced in whole or in part in any fashion or stored in a retrieval system of any type or transmitted by any means, electronically or mechanically, without the express, written permission of Pitney Bowes.

We have made every reasonable effort to ensure the accuracy and usefulness of this online manual; however, we cannot assume responsibility for errors or omissions or liability for the misuse or misapplication of our products.

Due to our continuing program of product improvement, equipment and material specifications as well as performance features are subject to change without notice. Your mailing system may not have some of the features described in this book.

Connect+ Series, Connect+ 500W / SendPro P1500, Connect+ 1000, Connect+ 2000, Connect+ 3000, E-Z Seal, IntelliLink, WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY, W-O-W, Postage By Phone, INVIEW, Ascent, SendSuite Express, Purchase Power, and Pitney Bowes Supply Line are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pitney Bowes Inc. All other trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The USPS® and Priority Mail® are registered trademarks of the United States Postal Service.

Alerting Messages

Various messages are used throughout this guide to alert you to potentially hazardous or error causing conditions. These messages are as follows:



Warning!

Alerts you to conditions or practices that could cause serious injury.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 2 of 367



Alerts you to conditions or practices that could cause damage to the equipment or to the material being run.

Important:

Alerts you to conditions or practices that could adversely affect equipment operation if instructions are not followed exactly.

Note:

Provides a comment or explanation of the associated topic.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 3 of 367

Table of Contents

1 - Safety		4 - Running mail	
Safety information	8	Preparing and correctly feeding the mail piece	s 60
		Running mail - quick start	65
		Step-by-Step Running Mail	73
2 - Getting started		Running a Manual Weight Entry job	75
What does this machine do?	14	Running an Attached Scale job	76
USPS requirements	16	Running a WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) job	77
Postal Security Device	17	Running a WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-	,,
Logging in and out of the system	18	W®) - First Piece Only job	78
The Home screen	19	Running mail with different shapes and weigh	ts79
Parts of the mailing and shipping system	20	Running a Differential Weighing mail job	80
Manual adjustments	31	Key in Postage	83
How to properly shut down your system	32	Running mail using a barcode scanner	84
System specifications	33	How to use the combined ZIP Code and Customer Reference Number barcode label	85
3 - Using jobs		Running mail with the Residual Rate Surcharge	87
All about jobs	38	Running Mail with the DI900™/DI950™ Inserting System Interface	89
Opening a job	40	Running mail with SendSuite Xpress™ or	
Previewing jobs	41	Ascent™	90
Creating a new job	42	Checking or changing the postage amount on the Run Mail screen	91
Editing a job	44	Changing the envelope or tape quantity	92
Deleting a job	45	Changing the Date	93
Job options	46	Changing the machine speed	94
Job types	49	Printing a sample mail piece	95
Saving changes to a job	56	Counting mail	96
Closing all jobs	57	Adding graphics, return addresses, messages and inscriptions to your mail	

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 4 of 367

Changing envelope size	109	Edit	206
Changing the envelope print area	110	Packages	207
Changing the color print quality	111	Settings	208
What are tracking services?	112	Troubleshooting	210
Using PresortXtra services	121		
		8 - Accounting	
5 - SendPro Shipping		All also and a second for a	000
Cotting started	120	All about accounting	222 227
Getting started Address book	128 132	Creating, editing or deleting an account	235
Settings	135	Accounting options when running mail All about transactions	240
Shipping/Carriers	139	All about surcharges	248
Transactions	153	All about Job IDs	252
Troubleshooting	157	All about accounting reports	254
J		5 1	
6 - Ship a Package		9 - Reports	
What is Ship a Package	160	All about reports	263
Logging into Ship a Package	161	Printing a Report	264
Setting up a Payment Method	162	All about funds and refill reports	265
Setting up and Using Cost Accounts	165	Confirmation services receipt	267
Setting up a Funds Account	168		
Adding postage to your Ship a Package			
account	169	10 - Refilling your Meter	
Setting the Auto Postage Refill Amount	170	All about postage	269
Using the Address Book	171	All about postage	
Creating and printing a shipping label -	177	Pitney Bowes postage account	270 271
Overview Transactions	177 190	Your postage meter Refilling your meter	271
		• •	
Request a refund	196	Checking your balance at Pitney Bowes	273
		Postage remaining	274
7 - Receive a Package		Postage refill settings	275
- Neceive at ackage		Viewing the refill history	276
Getting started	199	Viewing the meter information	277
Receive	204	Uploading postal information	279

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 5 of 367

Glossary

364

11 - Rates and updates

Withdrawing the meter

Checking for rates and updates automatically 282
Using the rates and updates scheduler 283
Checking for rates and software updates 284
Viewing the update history 285

280

12 - System Setup

Personal settings 287
Application settings 289
Internet and network settings 291
System settings 294
Hardware settings 310

13 - Maintenance

Installing a new tape roll

Refilling the envelope sealant bottle

Refilling the tape sealant bottle

Moistener maintenance

320

Printer maintenance

326

14 - Troubleshooting

How to resolve envelope feeding issues 348

How to resolve envelope sealing issues 355

How to resolve tape feeding issues 357

How to resolve printing issues 360

How to resolve postage refill issues 361

How to resolve touchscreen response issues 362

Contacting Pitney Bowes 363

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 6 of 367

1 - Safety

In this section

Safety information

Safety information



Warning:

Follow normal safety precautions for all office equipment.

Read all instructions before you attempt to operate the machine. Use the equipment only for its intended purpose.

- Use only Pitney Bowes approved supplies, in particular aerosol dusters. Improper storage and use
 of aerosol dusters or flammable aerosol dusters, can cause an explosive-like condition that could
 result in a personal injury and/or property damage. Never use aerosol dusters labeled flammable
 and always read instructions and safety precautions on the duster container label.
- To obtain Pitney Bowes supplies, please contact our Supply Line™ to place orders. Material Safety Data Sheets can be obtained on the web or from our Supply Line™.
- Use the power cord supplied with the machine and plug it into a properly grounded wall outlet located near the machine and easily accessible. Failure to properly ground the machine can result in severe personal injury and/or fire.
- The wall outlet supplying power to the machine must be a single dedicated wall outlet. Contact a
 licensed electrician to ensure there are no other wall outlets on the branch circuit.
- The electrical circuit (mains) supplying power to the outlet must be switched ON.
- Avoid touching moving parts or materials while the machine is in use. Keep hands, loose clothing, jewelry and long hair away from all moving parts.
- Do not remove covers or defeat safety interlock switches. Covers enclose hazardous parts that should only be accessed by properly trained service personnel. Immediately report to Pitney Bowes Service any damaged or non-functioning components that renders the unit unsafe.
- Place the unit in an accessible location to allow for proper venting of the equipment and to facilitate servicing.
- The power cord wall plug is the primary means of disconnecting the machine from the AC supply.
- Do not use an adapter plug on the line cord or wall outlet.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 8 of 367

- Do not remove the ground pin from the line cord.
- Avoid using wall outlets that are controlled by wall switches, or shared with other equipment.
- Do not route the power cord over sharp edges or trapped between furniture.
- Insure there is no strain on the power cord where it becomes jammed between the equipment, walls or furniture.
- Do not plug headphones into the Line Out jack # (Lime Green).
- Be certain the area in front of the wall receptacle into which the machine is plugged is free from obstruction.
- Before clearing a stoppage, be sure machine mechanisms come to a stop.
- When clearing a stoppage, avoid using too much force to protect against minor personal injury and damaging equipment.
- To prevent overheating, do not cover the vent openings.
- Operation of this equipment without periodic maintenance will inhibit optimum operating
 performance and could cause the equipment to malfunction. Contact your Pitney Bowes
 Customer Service Representative for required service schedule.
- Read all instructions before attempting to operate the equipment.
- Use this equipment only for its intended purpose.



Moving mechanism can result in personal injury. Keep hands, long hair, ties, jewelry and loose clothing away from moving parts.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 9 of 367



In case of an ink spill, leaking ink or excessive ink accumulation, immediately disconnect the power cord from the wall plug and contact Pitney Bowes. In the USA please call 1-800 522-0020. Customer Service Representatives are available Monday through Friday,

8:00 AM - 8:00 PM ET. Outside the USA please refer to the country contact sheet supplied with your system. Contact information can also be found at www.pitneybowes.com.

Note:

Always follow the specific occupational safety and health standards for your workplace.

United States

Note:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 10 of 367



Changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Except for Ethernet/LAN connection cables, shielded I/O and USB cables must be used with this equipment to ensure compliance with the limits. Use of unshielded cables is prohibited.

Note for California Customers Only

The battery in this product contains perchlorate material. California requires perchlorate-containing products to be accompanied by the following notice: Percholrate Material - special handling may apply. See: http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/

Canada

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

European Union «

It is certified that this system complies with all applicable Directives of the European Union. For a formal Declaration of Conformity please contact Compliance Engineering. Contact information is given below or on a separate document supplied with your system..

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 11 of 367



Warning:

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Responsible Party within the USA

Pitney Bowes 1Elmcroft Road Stamford, CT 06926-0700

(800) 522-0700

Outside the USA

Please refer to the country contact sheet supplied with your system. Contact information can also be found at www.pitneybowes.com.

Servicing

This product is serviceable. For service inquiries in the **USA** please call 1-800 522-0020. Customer Service Representatives are available Monday through Friday, 8:00 AM - 8:00 PM ET. **Outside the USA** please refer to the country contact sheet supplied with your system. Contact information can also be found at www.pitneybowes.com.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 12 of 367

2 - Getting started

In this section

What does this machine do?	14
USPS requirements	16
Postal Security Device	17
Logging in and out of the system	18
The Home screen	19
Parts of the mailing and shipping system	20
Manual adjustments	31
How to properly shut down your system	32
System specifications	33

What does this machine do?

The Connect+ Series is a digital envelope and mailing and shipping system that allows you to create custom designed content from a PC and download that content directly into a graphics library stored on the system for use on mail runs. You can now design an outer envelope with content that reinforces the internal message. You can add marketing, advertising, and other promotional messages to your mail pieces.

The Connect+ Series provides a unique and easy-to-use touch screen interface where you can access all of your applications from the home screen. Each application appears on the *Home screen* as a button. Simply select the button to run the applications. Use the full access web applications Verify Address, Track a Package, and Sign In to your account to increase you mailing efficiencies.

The system also provides a full range of mail system functions including:

- Printing postage on envelopes
- Printing postage on tapes (labels)
- Sealing envelopes
- Calculating postage based on item weight and size and class of mail.

What the system can measure

The system uses the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®)/Shape Based Rating module to process mail of varying thickness and size for and determine the postage amount based on the weight and dimensions of each mail piece. Systems with WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®)/Shape Based Rating use *shape based rating* for Express, Priority and First-Class mail.

What the system cannot measure

If your system does not have WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®)/Shape Based Rating but has an attached scale, you can measure only the weight of the mail piece. The postage amount will be based on the class specified for the job you are running.

For more information refer to Run a Job with an Attached Scale.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 14 of 367

WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®)/Shape Based Rating

The WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®)/Shape Based Rating module processes mixed mail (mail of varying sizes and weights) and determines the postage amount based on the weight and dimensions of each mail piece.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 15 of 367

USPS requirements

Since your postage meter (Postal Security Device) is licensed by the United States Postal Service (USPS), you must follow a few basic requirements.

- Mail must have the correct date and postage amount in the postage indicium.
- Metered mail must bear the ZIP Code location of the post office where the postage meter (Postal Security Device) is registered.
- If you move to another ZIP Code location, you must update the ZIP Code. You can do this by calling Postage by Phone® at 1.800.243.7800.
- Each time you refill your postage meter (Postal Security Device) through the LAN, the Postage By Phone® Meter Payment System computer automatically performs a postal inspection. If the postage meter in your mailing machine has not detected a refill transaction at certain intervals, the message "Inspection Required" appears on the Run Mail screen and then prompts you to connect to Pitney Bowes and perform an inspection.
- The postage tape you use must meet USPS specifications.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 16 of 367

Postal Security Device

The postage meter on your mailing system is a Postal Security Device (PSD) that incorporates the latest technology approved by the United States Postal Service to secure funds. This technology eliminates the need to perform physical inspections thereby making the system easier and more convenient to use.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 17 of 367

Logging in and out of the system

If users are enabled on your system, you will be required to enter a password to log on to the system. This prevents unauthorized use of the system.

To log in:

- 1. Select the appropriate username.
- 2. Enter your password and select **OK**.

To log out:

- 1. Select the **Shut down** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Log out.
- 3. Select OK.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 18 of 367

The Home screen

The Home screen is the first screen displayed when you log onto the system. It contains all of the application buttons you need to start any of the system applications including Run Mail, Print Shipping Label, Ship a Package, Receive a Package, and Tools.

By pressing these buttons you'll find buttons that you can use to select various different functions of the machine.

Tools

The Tools tile also provides buttons for direct links to web sites providing additional resources and support for your mailing operation:

- Verify Address Enter any delivery address to verify accurate Postal data, including spelling or accurate ZIP Codes. Provide reason codes for non-matches. Print shipping labels in standard USPS 4"x 6" format on bottom half of 8.5" x 11" sheet.
- My Account- Provides unlimited access to your account at pitneybowes.com. You can place a service call, access USPS tracking and value added services, check order status (product or service call), access service chat, and access supplies chat within the Pitney BowesStore.
- Discount and Presort Services Activating Presort Savings account gets you up to 15% of
 postage discount on qualifying mail, free pickup of eligible mail, delivery point Validation and Move
 Update processing.
- Buy Supplies Provides direct access to the Pitney Bowes Supply Line where you can purchase envelopes and paper, ink and toner, office products, and supplies for your Connect+ Series systems.
- **Track a Package** Track your USPS, UPS, FedEx or DHL/Airborne packages. Print status directly. View map and detailed information for each carrier as information is available.
- **Tools and Apps** Learn about all the different machines on offer from Pitney Bowes access support, the Pitney Bowes shop and sign in to your account.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 19 of 367

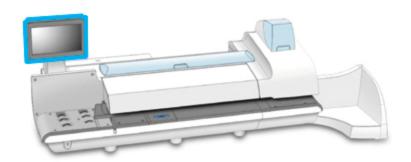
Parts of the mailing and shipping system

For important safety information, refer to Safety Information.

Touchscreen

The touchscreen allows you to communicate with the mailing system and the built-in postage meter (Postal Security Device).

Your system comes equipped with a 10.2" touchscreen. An optional 15" touchscreen is also available.



Stylus

A stylus is a pen-like tool used to make selections from a touchscreen display. The stylus may be preferred by some users over "finger touch".

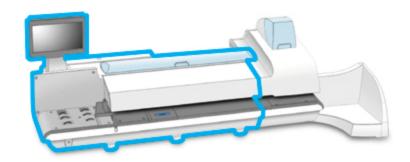
The display stylus is standard with all mailing and shippingsystems. It attaches to either side of the display and sits neatly in a tube holder.



Feeder

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 20 of 367

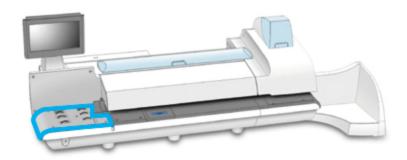
The feeder area consists of the feeder deck, side guide and thickness adjustment knob.



Feed Deck

The feed deck is the area where you load the envelopes.

If you have a Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 2000 or Connect+ 3000 system, this feeds the envelopes to the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) transport deck.

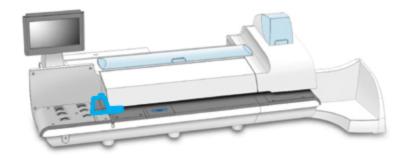


Side Guide

The moveable guide at the front of the feed deck is used to stabilize the envelope position when feeding it.

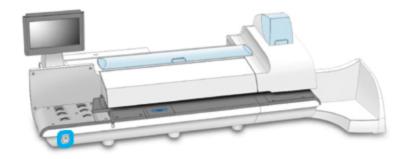
NOTE: The side guide is optional feature on Connect+ 3000 systems.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 21 of 367



Power Button

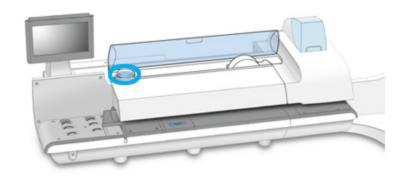
Turns the mailing system on and off. This is located on the lower left side of the feed deck.



Envelope Sealant Bottle

The envelope sealant bottle contains the E-Z Seal® solution used for moistening envelopes. It is located under the main cover, on the left.

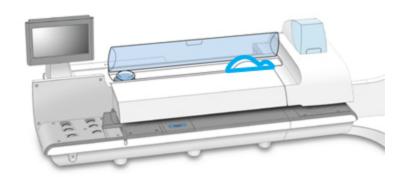
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 22 of 367



Tape

The system uses tape to print reports and postage indicia for packages or pieces of mail that are outside the limits specified for mailing materials. Connect+® 500W, Connect+ 1000and Connect+ 2000 systems use adhesive tape only. Connect+ 3000 systems can use either adhesive or gummed tape.

The tape is located under the supplies cover, on the right.



Attached Scale

If your mailing system has WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) (Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 2000, Connect+ 3000), the attached scale is used to weigh mail pieces that do not fit through the mailing system.

If your mailing system does not have WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) (Connect+ 1000), the attached scale is used to weigh all mail pieces, regardless of whether they fit through the machine or not.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 23 of 367

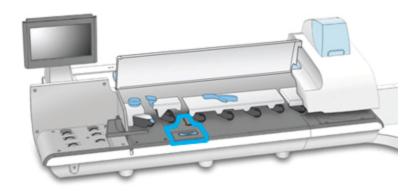
The attached scale is behind the supplies cover and to the right of the PSD cover.

Moistener Pad Assembly

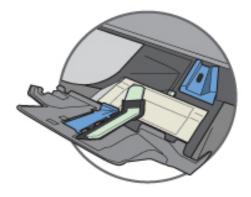
The moistener pad assembly moistens the flaps on the envelope.

NOTE: The moistener pad assembly is located beneath the moistener deck on Connect+ 3000 systems. To access it, lift the top release lever and then use the blue notch to pull on and open the moistener deck.

Connect+® 500W, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000 Systems



Connect+ 3000 Systems



Thickness Adjustment Knob

The thickness adjustment knob is located beneath the feeder cover. Turn this knob to adjust for the thickness of the envelopes.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 24 of 367

To set, turn the knob until the arrow on the knob lines up with the arrow to the right as shown below. The arrow on the knob snaps into position.

Connect+® 500W, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000 Systems

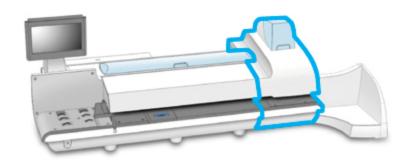
- **Setting 1:** Use this setting for postcards mail pieces that are 0.007 inches (0.18 mm) to 0.375 inches (9.52 mm) thick.
- Setting 2: Use this setting for mail pieces that are greater than 0.375 inches (9.52 mm) to the maximum of 0.625 inches (15.9 mm) thick.

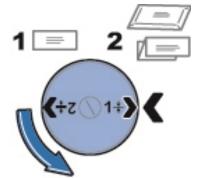
Connect+ 3000 Systems

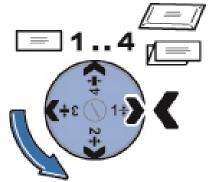
- **Setting 1:** Use this setting for postcards and mail pieces that are less than 0.25 inches (6.35 mm) thick.
- Setting 2: Use this setting for mail pieces that are greater than or equal 0.25 inches (6.35 mm) thick, but less than 0.50 inches (12.7 mm) thick.
- **Setting 3:** Use this setting for mail pieces that are greater than or equal to 0.50 inches (12.7 mm) thick, but less than 0.625 inches (15.9 mm) thick.
- **Setting 4:** Use this setting for mail pieces that are greater than or equal to 0.50 inches (12.7 mm) thick, but less than 0.625 inches (15.9 mm) thick.

Printer

The main components of the printer module are the ink cartridges, print heads and waste ink tray.



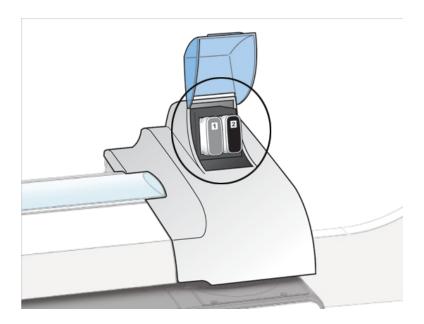




Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 25 of 367

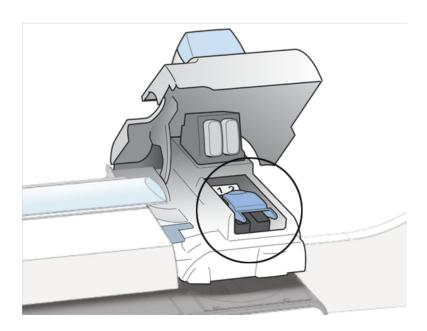
Ink Cartridges

The ink cartridges contain the ink used to print the postal indicia, as well as any additional items (*graphic ad*, text message, *return address*, etc.) you want to appear on your mail piece.



Print Heads

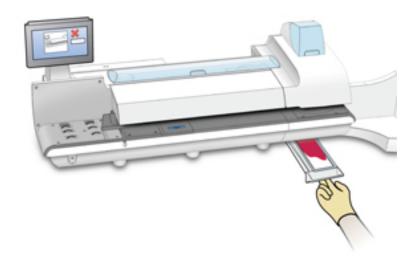
The print heads produce the postage indicia.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 26 of 367

Waste Ink Tray

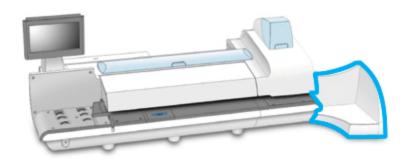
Ink is deposited in the waste ink tray during the print head cleaning process. The system will alert you when the waste tray is nearing full capacity.



Stacker

This is where mail is deposited after the postage is applied to the piece of mail. It is located on the right side of the system. The drop stacker shown here is available with every mailing system.

An optional power stacker is also available.



Tape Sealant Bottle

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 27 of 367

The tape sealant bottle is an optional feature for Connect+ 3000 systems. It contains the E-Z Seal® solution used for moistening gummed tape.

The tape sealant bottle is located to the right of the printer module, behind the stacker.

Wet/Dry Tape Lever

The wet/dry tape lever is an optional feature for Connect+ 3000 systems. Use this lever to set the type of tape you are using on your system.

The wet/dry tape lever is located to the right of the printer module, behind the stacker.



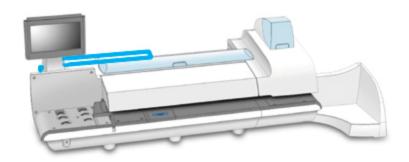
Push the lever to the right for dry tapes or pressure-sensitive tapes.



Push the lever to the left for wetting gummed tapes.

Postal Security Device

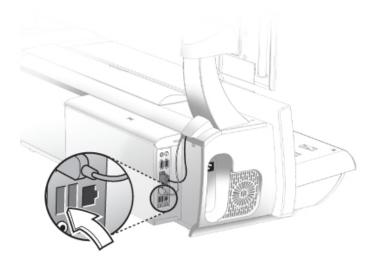
The PSD contains the funds and performs all of the calculations necessary to print postage indicia that comply with the latest USPS standards. It is located beneath the PSD cover on the back of the mailing system.



USB Ports

Two USB ports are located on the back, lower left side of the system. These provide communications with external devices like a printer or an attached scale.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 28 of 367



LAN Port

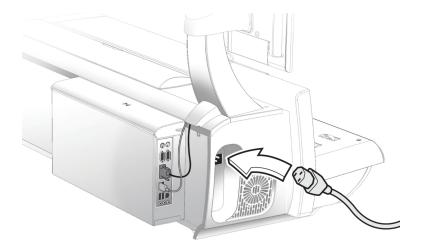
The LAN port is located on the back, lower left side of the system. This port provides the mailing system with a high bandwidth Internet connection.



Power Receptacle

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 29 of 367

The power receptacle is located on the back, left side of the system. It connects to the AC power cord (supplied).



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 30 of 367

Manual adjustments

You may need to make the following manual adjustments before you run a job.

For all systems:

Set the Thickness Adjustment Knob

For optional features:

- · Adjust the Side Guide
- Set the Wet/Dry Sealer Lever
- Adjust the Drop Stacker

You can pivot the touchscreen display to a convenient position simply by grasping it and moving it up, down, left or right. If the touchscreen does not respond when you touch it, you can also *calibrate the touchscreen*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 31 of 367

How to properly shut down your system



Warning!

Improper shutdown and the immediate removal of the print head will result in print head damage. Replacement of the print head will be necessary.

- 1. From the Home screen, select the settings icon in the lower right corner of the Home screen.
- 2. Select the Shut down option and confirm the selection.
- 3. Wait until all messages clear from the screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 32 of 367

System specifications

System Dimensions and We	ights
Connect+ 1000	Length : 37.5" (953 mm)
	With drop stacker fully extended, add 17.5" (394 mm)
	 With optional power stacker fully extended, add 47.5" (1207 mm)
	 With optional color printer, add 7.25" (184 mm)
	Depth: Printer cover open: 23.5" (597 mm)
	With optional color printer, add 1" (25.4 mm)
	Height: 24" (610 mm)
	With optional 15" color monitor, add 2" (51 mm)
	Weight : 110 lbs. (50 kg)
Connect+® 500W, Connect+ 2000	Length : 52.5" (1334 mm)
	 With drop stacker fully extended, add 17.5" (394 mm)
	 With optional power stacker *fully extended, add 47.5" (1207 mm)
	 With optional color printer, add 7.25" (184 mm)
	Depth: Printer cover open: 23.5" (597 mm)
	With optional color printer, add 1" (25.4 mm)
	Height: 24" (610 mm)
	With optional 15" color monitor, add 2" (51 mm)
	Weight : 150 lbs. (68 kg)
	* Power stacker not available with Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500

 Pitney Bowes
 Connect+ Series Operator Guide
 April, 2016
 Page 33 of 367

System Dimensions and Weights	
Connect+ 3000	Length : 61" (1549 mm)
	With drop stacker fully extended, add 17.5" (394 mm)
	 With optional power stacker fully extended, add 47.5" (1207 mm)
	 With optional color printer, add 7.25" (184 mm)
	 With optional color printer with tape moistener, add 11.5" (292 mm)
	Depth: Printer cover open: 23.5" (597 mm)
	 With optional color printer, add 1" (25.4 mm)
	Height: 24" (610 mm)
	With optional 15" color monitor, add 2" (51 mm)
	Weight : 165lbs. (75 kg)

Power and Compliance	
Power	100-240Vac, 50/60Hz., 6.4 - 3.0 Amps
Compliance	Optional ENERGY STAR®
	Refer to How to Set System Timeouts for information about the optional ENERGY STAR sleep mode.

Operating Conditions	
Operating Temperature	Maximum Room Ambient 40°C (104°F)

Capacities, Features, and Throughput	
Sealer Capacity	Approximately 3900 #10 single-insert mail pieces
Sealer Type	Pump-fed pad with sealing rollers

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 34 of 367

Capacities, Features, and Thr	oughput
Printer	High speed dual-printing technology, at 1200 DPI (vertical)
	 Mono Printer Module – prints both Postal Red and Black. Color Printer Module – prints both Postal Red, Process Color, and Black.
Print Head Life	800,000 cycles for full IBI Indicia
Timericad Life	000,000 cycles for full ibi indicia
Ink Capacity (in full size USPS IBI-C indicia)	Small cartridge: 8K mail pieces
C indicia)	Medium cartridge: 18K mail pieces
	Large cartridge: 45K mail pieces
Ink Cartridge Life	Shelf life: Maximum of 24 months from date of manufacture - for monochrome and color inks
	In use life: Maximum of 30 months from date of manufacture - includes any time on shelf before first use for monochrome and color inks
Tape Method	Connect+® 500W, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000: Adhesive Tape
	Connect+ 3000: Adhesive or Gummed Tape
Tape	5" roll, approximately 600 indicias per roll, without graphic ads
Throughput	Range of speed options available.
	Connect+® 500W: 2-Speeds, 60 and 120 Letters/min
	Connect+ 1000: 3-Speeds, 130 (Standard), 160, and 180 Letters/min
	 Connect+ 2000: Non W-O-W®: 3-Speeds, 130 (Standard), 160, and 180 Letters/min
	Connect+ 2000:W-O-W®: 3-Speeds, 70 (Standard), 90, 110 Letters/min
	 Connect+ 3000: Non W-O-W®: 4-Speed options, 160 (Standard), 210, 260, and 300 Letters/min
	Connect+ 3000: W-O-W®: 4-Speed options, 100 (Standard), 130, 160, and 200 Letters/min

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 35 of 367

Capacities, Features, and Throughput	
W-O-W® Weight Capacity	Connect+ 1000: NA
	Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500andConnect+ 2000: 16 ounce
	Connect+ 3000: 32 ounce
Stacking	 Drop Stacker Standard Power Stacker Optional (not available onConnect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500)
High Speed Connectivity	 25" LAN Cable Standard Wireless LAN Options Sprint 3G cellular available (Subscription charge applies).

Peripheral Options

- Drop or Power Stacker Options (Power Stacker not available with Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500)
- Compact Platform Weighing Options, 5, 10, or 15 lb. Capacity (Only 10lb. capacity available with Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500)
- Large Platform Weighing Options: 15, 30, 70, 149 lb. Capacity
- 1E20 Laser Printer
- 1E30 Brother HL5450DN Report Laser Printer
- Bar code scanning for Tracking Services (Confirmation Services) and Accounting
- Wireless Keyboard option
- USB Hub 4 Open Ports
- DI900/DI950 Mail Machine Interface (Not available with the Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500)

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 36 of 367

3 - Using jobs

In this section

All about jobs	38
Opening a job	40
Previewing jobs	41
Creating a new job	42
Editing a job	44
Deleting a job	45
Job options	46
Job types	49
Saving changes to a job	56
Closing all jobs	57

All about jobs

The Connect+™ Series allows you to save common jobs that can be recalled and easily modified.

A job is a collection of settings you select and a name that are stored within the system's memory for easy recall. A job can contain set values for such items as the account name, postage amount, class, carrier, a special service, a mode such as Attached Scale or Differential weighing, etc. If you run different kinds of mail, such as Sealed and Unsealed, you may find it more convenient to create a job for each kind. These settings make the system easy to learn – especially for the casual operator who does not consistently use a mailing system.

The *default job* is the job you use to store your most commonly used system settings. These are the settings your system will use whenever you restart your machine. After a certain period of inactivity, or when you power up, the system restores the default job settings.

- You can manage your jobs (create, edit, delete, rename, etc.) or select a job to process mail
 against by selecting the Run Mail button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- You can view a master list of the jobs on your system, and the settings associated with each job, by selecting the **Jobs** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.

Saved jobs are stored, and can be easily opened, edited, or deleted as necessary.

About job properties

All of the job properties for the current job are displayed in a list box on the left side of the Run Mail screen. To view all of the job settings, select the down arrow below the list box.

If one of the job properties is required to run this job, it is displayed in red. For example, if the job requires you to assign a class, Class Required appears in red in the list box.

The items appearing in the job properties list box depend on the job selected. If you have selected a specific job type, or a library job, the available job properties are limited to those options that apply specifically to the job type. For example, if the job is a Seal only, No printing job, the list box only contains the sealer setting and the account selection (if available).

The default job

There is always at least one job open in Run Mail - the default job.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 38 of 367

The default job is special:

- it is always open, and
- it is protected so you don't overwrite it easily.

To clear all changes made while running mail and to return to the default job to its original state, select the **Reload job** link on the Default job tab.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 39 of 367

Opening a job

Follow the steps below to open a job.

- You can open a job by selecting the **Open a job** tab on the Run Mail screen or by selecting the **Jobs** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen. The Jobs screen appears with a list of jobs available on your system.
- 2. Select the job you want to open.
- 3. Select **OK**. A tab for the job opens on the Run Mail screen.

To quickly move between frequently used jobs, open the jobs (up to five jobs can be open at one time) and then select the job tabs as necessary on the Run Mail screen.

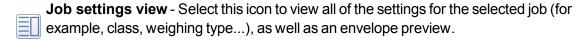
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 40 of 367

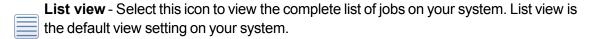
Previewing jobs

The Jobs screen lists all the jobs stored on your system.

- 1. Select the **Open a job** tab from within the Run Mail screen, or select the **Jobs** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. The Jobs screen appears with a list of jobs available on your system.
 - If necessary, you can sort the jobs by name, type or creator. Select the appropriate column heading to change the sort order.
 - Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the list.

Select the job you want to preview. You can change the view of the job using the icons in the upper right corner of the screen.





4. Select the back arrow button to return to the Home screen, or select **OK** to open the currently selected job in the Run Mail screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 41 of 367

Creating a new job

You can create a job:

- by editing an existing job and then selecting the Save as option on the Run Mail screen,
- by selecting the Create new job button on the Jobs screen, or
- by selecting Create new job... on the Options menu of the Run Mail screen.

Follow the steps below to create a new job on the Run Mail screen.

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **Options** button and then select **Create new job...**.
- 3. Select the appropriate *job type* from the list.
- 4. Select **OK**. The job you selected appears in a new job tab.
- 5. Select the appropriate job settings.
- Select Save As.
- 7. Type in the new job name and select **OK**.

Creating a new job from the jobs screen

You can create a job:

- by editing an existing job and then selecting the Save as option on the Run Mail screen,
- by selecting Create new job... on the Options menu of the Run Mail screen, or
- by selecting the Create new job button on the Jobs screen.

Follow the steps below to create a new job from the Jobs screen.

- 1. Select the **Jobs** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **Create new job** button.
- 3. Select the appropriate *job type* from the list.
- 4. Select **OK**. The Run Mail screen appears with the job you selected in a new job tab.
- 5. Select the appropriate job settings.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 42 of 367

- 6. Select Save As.
- 7. Type in the new job name and select **OK**.

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 43 of 367

Editing a job

You can edit a job by making changes to the job and envelope properties on the Run Mail screen.

- 1. Open the job that you want to edit.
- 2. Select the item you want to change.
 - To change anything that prints on the envelope, including the date, select the envelope. To change anything that prints on the tape, select the tape.
 - To change any of the job properties (for example, the class or mail), select the appropriate option in the *job properties list* located on the left side of the Run Mail screen.
- 3. Save your changes.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 44 of 367

Deleting a job

To delete a saved job:

- 1. Select the **Jobs** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the job you want to delete.
- 3. Select the **Options** button and then select **Delete job**.

Note:

You cannot delete the default job or jobs that are locked against editing.

- 4. Select Yes, delete.
- 5. Select **OK** when done.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 45 of 367

Job options

The **Options** button at the bottom of the Jobs screen allows you to manage and edit your jobs. Select the Options button and choose from one of the following.

- Rename job Select this option if you want to rename the selected job. The job must be closed on the Run Mail screen before you rename it.
- Duplicate job Select this option if you want to create a copy of the selected job.
- Delete job Select this option if you want to delete the selected job. The default job, library jobs, and jobs that have been locked cannot be deleted.
- Make this job the default job Select this option if you want to make the selected job the default job.

Creating a duplicate job

To create a duplicate, or copy, of a job:

- 1. Select the **Open a job** tab on the Run Mail screen, or select the **Jobs** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the job you want to duplicate.
- 3. Select **Options** then select **Duplicate job**. The system creates a duplicate job. This job appears in the Job list below the original, with the word "copy" after the name.
- 4. Select **OK** when done.

Setting the default job

The default job is the most commonly used job on your mailing system. It is automatically selected whenever you restart your mailing system. You can change the default job by editing it and then saving the changes, or you can open a different job and save that job as the default job.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 46 of 367

Note:

Key in Postage, Postage Correction and Date Correction jobs cannot be set as the default job.

Setting the default Job on the Run Mail screen

- 1. Ensure the job you want to make the default is open and active on the Run Mail screen.
- 2. Select the **Options** button.
- 3. Select **Save as default job**. the selected job appears on the Default jobs tab. The previous default job appears on a new tab.

Setting the default job on the Jobs screen

- 1. Select the **Jobs** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the job you want to make the default.
- 3. Select **Options** then select **Save as default job**. The system gives the selected job the default icon. The job also appears on the Default jobs tab in the Run Mail application.
- 4. Select **OK** when done.

Renaming a job

To rename a job:

- Select the **Open a job** tab from within the Run Mail screen, or select the **Jobs** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the job you want to rename.
- 3. Select **Options** then select **Rename job**.
- 4. Type in the new job name.
- 5. Select **OK** when done.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 47 of 367

Reloading a Job

The Reload job option allows you to reset an edited or modified job to its original state. Use this option to discard changes you have made to a job.

On the run mail screen:

1. Select the modified job.

Note:

An asterisk appears next to job name when it has been edited or modified.

2. Select **Reload job**. The system reverts to the previously saved version of the job.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 48 of 367

Job types

When *creating a new job*, you can select from the following job types.

- Select Seal only, no printing if you only want to seal the envelope and do NOT want to apply
 postage.
- Select Date correction when you need to print the correct date on a piece of mail that already has
 postage printed on it.
- Select Postage correction if you do not have the correct amount of postage on a piece of mail.
- Select Received date and time if you want to print the date or time on incoming mail for record keeping.
- Select Graphic ad only if you only want to print a graphic on the envelope.
- Select Permit if you want to print a permit on a piece of mail.
- Select *Postal* if you want to print postage on a piece of mail.
- Select Count only if you want to count mail without printing postage.
- Select Weigh-Rate-Count if you want to track the weight and rate of your mail pieces as well as
 count mail without printing postage.

Note:

The Count only and Weigh-Rate-Count job types are only available if your system uses accounting.

Weighing methods

When creating a postal job, you can select from the following weighing methods.

• The WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®)* method processes mixed mail (mail of varying sizes and weights, depending your system configuration) and determines the postage amount based on the weight and dimensions of each mail piece.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 49 of 367

- Use the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®), first piece only method for mail pieces that are
 identical (same size and number of sheets). The system weighs the first piece of mail to be fed and
 calculates the postage. The rest of the stack will be posted with the same postage as the first
 piece.
- Use the Attached scale method if you do not know the weight of the piece of mail.
- Use the Manual weight entry* method if you want to type in the weight of an item that you weighed
 on a separate scale. This is useful for items that exceed the weight capacity of the attached scale
 or mailings that are always the same weight.
- Use the *Differential weighing** method if you want to place all of the mail on the scale at once, then
 remove and run each piece through the system. The system calculates the postage for each piece
 of mail you remove from the scale and applies the postage to the piece as it goes through the
 mailing system. For larger pieces of mail (large envelopes or packages), you can use differential
 weighing to have the system automatically print a tape every time you remove a piece of mail from
 the scale.

Printing a graphic only

You can create a job to print only non-postal elements like a graphic on a tape or envelope. If your system uses accounting, a piece count will be retained for accounting reports.

Follow the steps below to create an ad only job. If you have already created an graphic only job, *open the job* and begin running mail.

- 1. Select the **Options** button on the Run Mail screen.
- 2. Select Create a new job... and then select Graphic ad only.
- 3. Select **OK**. A new job tab appears.
- 4. Add the graphic to the job.
- 5. Type in the envelope or tape quantity and then select **Start** or **Tape**.
- 6. To save the job, select the **Save As** link at the top of the screen.
- 7. Type in the job name and select **OK**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 50 of 367

Printing a date correction

You can print a date correction if you need to modify the date printed on your envelope. If you have already created a date correction job, *open the job* and begin running mail.

Follow the steps below to create a date correction job.

- 1. Select the **Options** button at the bottom of the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select Create new job... and then select Date correction.
- Select **OK**. A new job tab appears. The Job Properties list is populated with the required date correction job settings. Note:

The weighing method is not displayed in the postage correction job. Sealing mode is set to off.

- 4. If necessary, change the format of the date.
- 5. If you are printing a tape, select the **Tape** button.
- 6. If you are printing on an envelope and if the envelope is sealed, *change the sealing method* to sealer off.
 - a. Turn the piece of mail around 180 degrees so that the postal indicia is in the lower left corner. Place the envelope on the feed deck with the flap facing down.
 - b. Select the Start button.
- 7. To save the job, select the **Save As** link at the top of the screen.
- 8. Type in the job name and select **OK**.

Printing a postage correction

If you do not have the correct postage on a piece of mail, you can add more postage by printing a postage correction directly on the envelope or on a tape. If you have already created a postage correction job for the amount required, *open the job* and begin running mail.

Follow the steps below to create a postage correction job.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 51 of 367

- 1. Select the **Options** button at the bottom of the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select Create new job... and then select Postage correction.
- 3. Select **OK**. A new job tab appears. The Job Properties list is populated with the required postage correction job settings.

Note:

The weighing method is not displayed in the postage correction job. Sealing mode is set to off.

- 4. Select **Additional** located to the right of the envelope or tape image. Type in the additional postage required and select **OK**.
- 5. If you are printing a tape, press the **Tape** button.
- 6. If you are printing on an envelope, turn the piece of mail around 180 degrees so that the postal indicia is in the lower left corner.
 - a. Place the envelope on the feed deck with the flap facing down.
 - b. Press the Start button.
- 7. To save the job, select the **Save As** link at the top of the screen.
- 8. Type in the job name and select **OK**.

Printing the received date and time

The Received date and time option allows you to print the current time and date, along with the word "Received" on incoming mail. If you have already created a received date and time job, *open the job* and begin running mail. If your system uses accounting, a piece count will be retained for accounting reports.

Note:

When printing the date and/or time, the sealer is set to off.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 52 of 367

Follow the steps below to create a received date and time job.

- 1. Select the **Options** button on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select Create new job... and then select Received date and time.
- Select OK.
- 4. Select **Start** or **Tape**.
- 5. To save the job, select the **Save As** link at the top of the screen.
- 6. Type in the job name and select **OK**.

Printing a permit

You can print a permit on a piece of mail instead of an indicia. A permit is a postal mark containing a permit number that provides you with special processing or discount rates. You get the permit(s) from the US Post Office. If you have already created a permit job, *open the job* and begin running mail.

Follow the steps below to create a permit job.

- 1. Select the **Options** button at the bottom of the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select Create new job... and then select Permit job.
- 3. Select **OK**. A new job tab appears. The *Job Properties* list box is populated with the required permit job settings.
- 4. Select the Permit Holder City and State button.
 - a. Type in the city and state.
 - b. Select **OK**.
- 5. Select the **Company Name or Permit Number** button in the Job Properties list box.
 - a. Enter either the permit number or the company name.
 - b. Select **OK**.
- 6. Select the Class button.
 - a. Select the appropriate class.
 - b. Select OK.
- 7. To save the job, select the **Save As** link at the top of the screen.
- 8. Type in the job name and select **OK**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 53 of 367

Sealing envelopes without printing postage

You can create a job to seal envelopes without printing postage. If your system uses accounting, a piece count will be included in accounting reports.

Follow the steps below to create a seal only job. If you have already created a seal only job, *open the job* and begin running mail.

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button from the **Home** screen.
- 2. Select the **Options** button.
- 3. Select Create new job....
- 4. Select Seal only, no Printing.

Note:

Print date is off in Seal only job.

- 5. Select **OK**. The job appears in a new job tab.
- 6. Select **Start** to begin feeding and sealing envelopes.
- 7. If you want to save this job, select **Save as**.
- 8. Type in the job name and select **OK**.

Weighing, rating and counting mail without printing postage

If your system uses accounting, you can create a job to weigh, rate and count mail without printing postage. In addition, you can add a graphic ad to the mail piece. The weighing and rating information, as well as the piece count, will be included in accounting reports.

Follow the steps below to create a count only job. If you have already created a count only job, *open the job* and begin running mail.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 54 of 367

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **Options** button.
- 3. Select Create new job....
- 4. Select Weigh-Rate-Count.
- 5. Select **OK**. The job appears in a new job tab.
- 6. Select the appropriate counter and then select **OK**.
 - Total Weigh-Rate-Count: total number of pieces for the current job.
 - Resettable Weigh-Rate-Count: the total number of pieces run since you reset the counter.
- 7. If necessary, add a *graphic* to the job.
- 8. Select an account
- 9. If necessary, select a surcharge.
- 10. Select the appropriate class, carrier, or special services.
- 11. Select **Start** to begin feeding and counting envelopes.
- 12. If you want to save this job, select **Save as**.
- 13. Type in the job name and select **OK**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 55 of 367

Saving changes to a job

If you have made changes to a job, an asterisk appears next to the job name on the Run Mail screen. You can save your changes to a job at any time. If you want to discard the changes you've made, you can reload the previously saved version of the job.

- To save your changes to the selected job, select **Save**.
- To save your changes as a new job select **Save as**. Enter a new job name and then select **OK**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 56 of 367

Closing all jobs

Select **Start over** on the Run Mail screen to close all open jobs, discard all unsaved edits made to saved jobs, discard all unsaved jobs and reload the default job.

Note:

The Start over option does not allow you to save changes made to the *default job*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 57 of 367

4 - Running mail

In this section

Preparing and correctly feeding the mail pieces	60
Running mail - quick start	65
Step-by-Step Running Mail	73
Running a Manual Weight Entry job	75
Running an Attached Scale job	76
Running a WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) job	77
Running a WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) - First	
Piece Only job	78
Running mail with different shapes and weights	79
Running a Differential Weighing mail job	80
Key in Postage	83
Running mail using a barcode scanner	84
How to use the combined ZIP Code and Customer	
Reference Number barcode label	85
Running mail with the Residual Rate Surcharge	87
Running Mail with the DI900™/DI950™ Inserting	
System Interface	89
Running mail with SendSuite Xpress™ or Ascent™	90
Checking or changing the postage amount on the Run	
Mail screen	91
Changing the envelope or tape quantity	92
Changing the Date	93
Changing the machine speed	94
Printing a sample mail piece	95
Counting mail	96

Adding graphics, return addresses, messages, and inscriptions to your mail	
Changing envelope size	109
Changing the envelope print area	110
Changing the color print quality	111
What are tracking services?	112
Using PresortXtra services	121

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 59 of 367

Preparing and correctly feeding the mail pieces

If your system has WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) (Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 2000 or Connect+ 3000), you do not need to sort your mail. Simply place the larger pieces on the bottom of the stack on the feeder. If your mail pieces are sealed, fan them to make sure they are not stuck together as a result of previous processing.

If you system does not have WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®):

- 1. Sort the mail by envelope size.
- 2. Shingle envelopes (slant the stack as shown) so the bottom envelope feeds first. All envelopes in a single stack should be the same size.



- 3. Place the stack of mail on the feed deck. Place the envelopes with the flaps down and against the rear wall.
- 4. Make sure the envelopes are pushed far enough so that they cover the feed sensor located on the feed deck near the rear wall.
- Adjust the side guide so it is close to, but not touching, the bottom edge of the envelope stack. Be sure and leave a slight clearance between the side guide and envelopes (about 1/16 inch clearance).
- 6. Use the *thickness adjustment knob* to adjust for envelope thickness.
 - For large stacks of thin mail, such as single inserts or post cards, the thin mail setting may be needed for better performance.
 - To pick a setting, turn the knob so the setting aligns with the pointer nearby.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 60 of 367

Reviewing the mail piece specifications

Envelope dimensions

Minimum	Maximum
3.5 in. x 5 in. (88.9mm x 127mm) postcard size	Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000: 13 in. x 14 in. (330 mm x 356 mm)
	Connect+ 3000: 15 in. x 15 in. (381 mm x 381 mm)

Envelope thickness

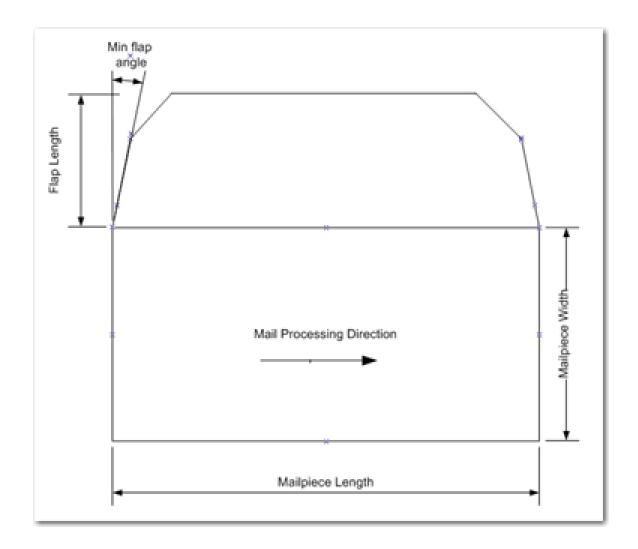
Minimum	Maximum
Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000: 0.18 in. (0.007 mm)	Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000: 0.625 in. (15.9 mm)
Connect+ 3000: 0.09 in. (0.004 mm)	Connect+ 3000: 0.75 in. (19.1 mm)

Envelope flap depth for sealing

Minimum	Maximum
1 in. (25.4 mm)	Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000: 3 in. (76.6 mm)
	Connect+ 3000: 3-7/8 in. (98 mm)

- For envelopes with a flap length from 1 to 2.36 inches (25 mm to 60 mm), the minimum flap angle is 18 degrees.
- For envelopes with a flap length greater than 2.36 inches (60 mm) to the maximum flap length for the particular model, the minimum flap angle is 21 degrees.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 61 of 367



Acceptable envelope materials

Material type and finish must be matte and may include:

- White Wove
- Kraft/Brown Kraft
- Manila
- Envelopes made of recycled paper
- Self-seal envelopes

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 62 of 367

- Tri-fold tabbed (2 tabs minimum) inserts (20 lbs. (75 gms) to 28 lbs. (105 gms))
- Cranes Crest



Caution:

Do not use envelopes made with glossy materials such as fliers, or Tyvek® envelopes. Also do not use envelopes too fragile (such as air mail and onion skin envelopes) to pass through the feeder.

Determining the correct postage method

- If your mail requires no application of postage, see Chart C to choose your job settings.
- If your mail requires postage, you must determine if you can print directly on your mail. You can
 feed mail if your pieces of mail meet the requirements provided in *Mail Piece Specifications*. If your
 mail meets these requirements, select the appropriate postage or weighing method from **Chart A**.
- If your mail does NOT meet the *Mail Piece Specifications* requirements for direct printing, you MUST print a postage tape. Select the applicable postage or weighing method from **Chart B**.

Chart A: Printing on mail

If:	Then use this method:
You know the amount of postage needed for your mail.	Key in Postage
You are running postcards.	Select the Postage Rate when selecting the Class.
You do not know the weight of your piece of mail.	Attached Scale
The pieces of mail are different weights but fall within the guidelines listed above and in the <i>Mail Piece</i> Specifications topic.	WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®)
All pieces of mail are identical.	WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®), first piece only

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 63 of 367

If:	Then use this method:
Your pieces of mail vary in types, sizes, and/or weights and you have several you need to process quickly and efficiently.	Differential weighing with Auto envelope printing selected

Chart B: Printing on tape

If:	Then use this method:
You know the amount of postage needed for your mail.	Key in Postage
You do not know the weight of your piece of mail.	Attached Scale
You have several pieces of mail and do not know the required postage amounts.	Attached Scale
You know the weight.	Manual weight entry
Your pieces of mail vary in types, sizes, and/or weights.	Differential weighing with Auto tape printing selected

Chart C: Processing mail without postage

If:	Then use this method:
You only want to seal the envelopes and do not want to apply postage.	Seal only
You want to print the date or time incoming mail for record keeping.	Date and Time non-postal jobs

Shape Based Rating

The shape of a mail piece (thickness, length, width) plays a large role in the pricing of First-Class Mail®, Express Mail, and Priority Mail postage. Since May of 2007, the USPS® has combined weight with shape to better align prices with processing costs. This is to ensure that every type of mail covers its costs, i.e., Shape Based Rating or SBR.

When shape based rating is used, the mailing system determines the size and weight of the mail and automatically selects the appropriate rate.

Shape based rating is available on systems with the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®)/Shape Based Rating module.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 64 of 367

Running mail - quick start

Note:

If you have accounts enabled on your system, you must select an account before you can run a mail job.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Load the envelopes.
- 3. Check the postage amount on the screen.
- 4. Check the sealer setting.
- 5. Select **Start** or **Tape** to run the job.

Run Mail screen icons and buttons

ng or Selecting: a preview of the tape to be printed.
a preview of the tape to be printed.
ne Edit Envelope screen allowing you to make changes to elope.

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 65 of 367

Button, Icon, or Link	Touching or Selecting:
Envelope Preview icon	Displays a preview of the envelope to be printed.
r=1	
Envelope Preview image	Opens the Edit Envelope screen allowing you to make changes to your envelope.
	jed. G. Herepe.
Postage Amount image	Opens the Key in Postage dialog screen.
\$ 0.471	
\$ 0.471	
Date image	Opens the Print Date dialog box within the Edit Envelope screen so you can <i>modify the date</i> printed on tape or envelope.
	you can mount the date printed on tape of envelope.
MAR 11 2016	
MAK 11 2010	
Start button	If the job is selected and envelopes loaded, this starts the job running.
Start	
30010	

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 66 of 367

Button, Icon, or Link	Touching or Selecting:
Tape button	If the job is selected and ready, this results in running the job.
Tape	
Weighing icon	The weighing icon opens the <i>weighing method dialog</i> screen. The shape of this icon varies depending on the weighing method for the current job.
● 0 lb 0.0 oz WOW	
Sealer icon	The sealer icon opens the <i>sealing method dialog</i> screen. The icons shown here indicates sealing is on.
♦ On	

Run Mail options

Select **Options** button at the bottom of the Run Mail screen and select the appropriate option.

- **Print a sample piece** prints an envelope or tape so you can see exactly how the address, inscriptions, ads or graphics elements will print on the mail piece for the current job.
- **Zero scale** this ensures that the attached scale is reading zero when there are no mail pieces on it.
- Create a new job select this to create a new job.
- **High value warning** set a value at which the mailing system warns you that you have entered a postage value that is more than the amount you are setting here. This feature prevents you from accidentally printing a postage amount that is more than you need.
- **Show Envelope Quantity** set a value if you need the machine to run a set amount of envelopes. This feature is useful for running set batches of mail.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 67 of 367

Changing or selecting the weighing method

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select the Weighing icon.
- 3. Select the appropriate weighing method:
 - WOW
 - WOW, first piece only
 - Attached scale
 - Differential weighing
 - Manual weight entry

If your system does not have the optional WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) or Manual weight entry method, you need to select the **Attached scale** method.

4. Select OK.

If you are running mail with mixed sizes and weights, refer to *How do I run mail that has different sizes* and weights.

Changing the class, carrier, or special services

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. To display and select the classes and services available on your system or in your country open a postal job and select **Class** in the Job Properties list box on the Run Mail screen.
- 3. Select the **All classes and services** tab on the classes and services screen. When you select this tab, the last class selected is displayed. To clear the selected class and any associated services, select **Start over** within this tab.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 68 of 367

4. Select the class from the class list box.

More information about selecting a class:

- If the class has other subclasses associated with it, it will have a plus sign (+) in front of it. Selecting the class will display the additional subclasses within the Class list box. For example, in the US, you can select First Class, then Letter.
- If an option button appears in front of the class, the postage amount is typically displayed after the class name.
- Selecting the back arrow button at the top of the Class list box returns you to the previous class level. For example, if you have selected First Class >Letter, selecting Back returns you to the Class list box.
- If the class requires additional information, it will display ellipses "... " after the name. When you select this class, you are prompted to type in the additional information.
- When you select a class, the rating factors for that class appear in the list box on the left of the Run Mail screen. For example, for USPS rates, this may include the Weighing method, Destination, and Print date. To change any of these factors, select the item in the list box.
- If special services are available for a class, they are displayed in the Extra services list box. To select a service, touch the checkbox for the service. For example, in the US for First Class letter, you can add insurance or COD. You can also add *confirmation tracking services* like Delivery confirmation, E-Certified, or Certified.
- If you select a class or service that is incompatible with a.) the weighing method, b.) the weight of a mail piece currently on the scale, c.) a weight or amount of postage entered manually, d.) or a destination, a dialog box appears and prompts you to modify the item. For example, if the weighing method is incompatible you are prompted to select a new method.
- 5. If the class or weight requires a *ZIP* or *Zone* code, the system prompts you to enter it.
- 6. If you select an International rate, the system prompts you to select the country.
- 7. Select any extra service or services available for the class from the Extra services list box.
- 8. Select OK.

Selecting a ZIP or Zone

If you select a class or weight from within the *Run Mail* screen that requires a destination ZIP or Zone code (for example, Express Mail Parcel), the system prompts you to enter it.

Use the keyboard type in the ZIP or Zone code, then select **This is a ZIP** or **This is a Zone**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 69 of 367

Note:

You are only prompted to enter a ZIP/Zone code if the job does not have a code, or if you have repowered the system. Once you enter a ZIP/Zone code, the system stores that value and will continue to use it. In order to change it, you must *select a different class*.

Selecting a country

If you select a class from within the *Run Mail* screen that requires a country (for example, International), the system prompts you to select it.

The list of available countries appears in the Destination Country dialog screen. Scroll through the list and select the option button next to the appropriate country.

Note:

You are only prompted to enter a country if the job does not have a country stored, or if you have repowered the system. Once you enter a country, the system stores it and will continue to use it. In order to change it, you must select a different destination by touching or selecting the Destination option in the Job Properties list on the left side of the Run Mail screen.

Changing the sealing method

You can change the sealing method for a job while running mail. You can turn the sealer on and off or seal envelopes without printing postage.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select the Sealer icon.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 70 of 367

- 3. Select the appropriate sealing option.
 - Select **Sealer on** to print postal and/or non-postal elements and seal the envelope.
 - Select Sealer off to print postal and/or non-postal elements without sealing the envelope.
 - Select Sealing only, no Printingto seal the envelope without printing.
- 4. If you selected "Sealer on" or "Sealing only, No printing" you can adjust the wetness of the sealer for this job. Select and drag the control button to adjust the wetness. 1 is the driest setting; 9 is the wettest. Use the + and buttons for a more precise selection.

Note:

This adjustment only changes the wetness setting for the selected job. If you do not adjust the wetness, the job will use the *default sealer wetness setting*.

- 5. If you are using a Connect+ 3000, and you selected "Sealer on" or "Sealing only, No printing", select the appropriate flap position:
 - All envelopes are open flap and nested, or
 - Some envelopes are closed flap (No previously sealed envelopes).
- 6. Select OK.
- 7. Select **Start** to run the job, or **Reload job** to return to the previously saved version of the job.

Graphics and permit-only printing

If you have a graphics and permit-only printing system, you have a fully-featured Connect+ Series system with a deactivated meter, which prevents postage printing. Graphics and permit-only systems can run non-postal jobs as well as utilize sealing and accounting features with no meter charges.

Although a mailing and shipping graphics and permit-only system cannot print postage, the United States Postal Service (USPS) still requires an electronic inspection of the meter. Periodically, you will receive a "Postal Inspection Required" message on your system. You can *check your balance at Pitney Bowes* to satisfy this requirement. Refer to *Your Postage Meter* for more information about postal inspections.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 71 of 367

Running mail

With a graphics and permit-only system you can:

- Print the correct date on a piece of mail that already has postage printed on it.
- Print the *received date and time* on incoming mail for record keeping.
- Print a graphic on the envelope.
- Print a permit on a piece of mail.
- Seal envelopes without printing postage.
- Count how many pieces of mail you run.
- Track the mail you run with the integrated accounting feature.

Note:

- If the default job on your system is a postal job, the Low Funds warning will appear each time you open the Run Mail application. *Change the default job* to a job that does not print postage (e.g. Permit or Graphic ad only) to prevent this message from appearing.
- The following message will appear on the Run Mail screen: Alert 1 of 1: Funds Manager: PSD funds available are below monetary limit set by user in FM Refill Setup screen. You can ignore this message on graphics and permit-only printing systems.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 72 of 367

Step-by-Step Running Mail

Use the Run Mail screen to select your job or review current job settings. This screen also keeps a running count of the processed mail. Refer to *Run Mail Screen Icons and Buttons* for a summary of the screen icons.

Note:

If you have accounts enabled on your system, you must select an account before you can run a mail job.

- 1. Select the Run Mail button from the Home screen.
- 2. Select an available job tab (or jobs) or open another job using the *Open a Job* tab along the top of the screen.
- Verify the current job settings displayed in the Job Properties list box on the left side of the Run Mail screen. To change any of the settings, simply select the item, for example, select Class to change the class.

More information:

- To change the weighing or sealing method, select its icon on the Run Mail screen.
- To enter a new postage amount, select the Key in Postage tab at the bottom of the screen, or select the postage amount in the Run Mail screen.
- To change the *number of envelopes or tapes* to print for this job, select the Envelope or Tape link tab on the Run Mail screen.
- 4. To make changes to the envelope, or to the *items that print on the envelope*, select the **Edit envelope** link on the Run Mail tab. This opens the Edit envelope screen.
- 5. To change the speed at which you process mail, select *Machine speed* from the Job Properties list box.
- 6. To preview the envelope, select the **View full preview** button at the bottom of the Edit envelope screen.
- 7. To view other possible options (for example, to print a sample mail piece) select the **Options** button at the bottom of the screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 73 of 367

- 8. Load envelopes and press the **Start** button, or if printing to tape, press the **Tape** button. **More information:**
 - If the message "Optimizing print quality..." displays, the system may be performing normal printer maintenance. Once complete, it will start printing.
 - If you have not loaded the envelopes onto the feeder, or if you need to add more mail to the feeder, the Run Mail screen shows the message "Waiting for Envelope".
 - If after a certain time you have not loaded envelopes, the feeder will stop and the message "Stopping..." is displayed.
- 9. As the system processes the mail pieces, it keeps track of the number of pieces and the total postage amount. To check or clear the piece count, select the **Counter** button at the bottom of the Run Mail screen.
- 10. If an envelope or tape jams during printing, the system stops and displays the location of the jam. Once you clear the jam you have to option of printing another envelope or tape.
- 11. To save any changes you have made to this job, select **Save** or **Save as** on the top of the Run Mail screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 74 of 367

Running a Manual Weight Entry job

When you need to use a scale that is not connected to your system, you can still use the system to calculate the postage for you.

- 1. Select the Run Mail button from the Home screen.
- 2. Select a job that uses Manual weight entry.
- 3. Place the mail piece on the detached scale and note its weight.
- 4. Select the Weighing icon.
 - a. Ensure the Manual weight entry option is selected.
 - b. If necessary, change the weighing units.
 - c. Type in the mail piece weight.
 - d. Select **OK** to go back to the Run Mail screen.
- 5. Select the class of service.
- 6. Put the mail on the feed deck.
- 7. Select **Start**, or if printing to tape, select **Tape**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 75 of 367

Running an Attached Scale job

If you have a large mail piece that cannot be fed through your machine and you have an attached scale, use the Attached Scale method. Note that the system will automatically select this method if you place a piece of mail on your attached scale. It will also display the weight of the mail piece next to the Weighing icon on the Run Mail screen. If the scale is not set to zero when there is no weight on the scale you can reset it to zero.

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button from the Home screen.
- 2. Select a job that uses an attached scale or select the Weighing icon.
 - a. Select the **Attached scale** option.
 - b. Make sure the scale reads 0 when there are no mail pieces or any objects on the scale. If necessary, select **Zero Scale**.
 - c. Select OK.
- 3. Place the mail piece on the scale. The amount displays next to the Weighing icon.
- 4. If you are printing on tape, select **Tape**. If you are printing postage on the mail piece, place the piece on the feed deck and select **Start**.

Zeroing the scale while running mail

Use this if you have an attached scale and it displays a weight greater than zero when there is nothing on the scale.

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button from the Home screen.
- Select the Weighing icon.
- 3. Select the **Attached scale** option.
- 4. Select the **Zero scale** button under the current weight.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 76 of 367

Running a WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) job

The WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) method increases your productivity by weighing the piece of mail and applying the correct postage as it travels through the mailing machine. You do not have to sort your mail by weight before processing.



Caution:

Do not lean on or disturb the system while it is processing mail in this mode. It will affect the amount of postage applied to the mail piece.

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button from the Home screen.
- 2. Select a job that uses WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) or select the Weighing icon.
 - a. Check to see that the weighing method is set to WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®). If necessary, select the WOW option.
 - b. Select OK.
- 3. Put all of the mail on the feed deck.
 - · All mail must be same width.
 - Use the side guide to guide the mail into the feeder.
- 4. Select Start.

If you prefer to use a different class for mail over a certain weight, you can set the system to not print postage above that weight. To do this modify the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) weight limit.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 77 of 367

Running a WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) - First Piece Only job

Use this method if all of the mail pieces in your job are identical, for example, if they all have the same number of pages in the same size envelope. Since the system only has to weigh the first piece, this job runs faster.

In this weighing method, the machine weighs the first mail piece and processes the remaining mail at the same postage rate. If Shape Based Rating (SBR) class is used, the first envelope is also measured.



Caution:

Do not lean on or disturb the system while it is processing mail in this mode. It will affect the amount of postage applied to the mail piece.

- 1. Select the Run Mail button from the Home screen.
- 2. Select a job that uses WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) first piece only or select the Weighing icon.
 - a. Select WOW, first piece only.
 - b. Select **OK**.
- 3. Put all of the mail on the feed deck.
- 4. Select Start.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 78 of 367

Running mail with different shapes and weights

For some classes of service, the Post Office bases the price of the mail piece on both the weight and the shape of the item. Systems equipped with WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) can weigh and measure the mail piece as it moves through the system when a Shape Based Rating class is selected.

- 1. Open the appropriate job.
- 2. Set or verify that the weighing method is set to WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®).
- 3. Select **Class** in the Job Properties list box and select the option for Shape Based Rating. Select any other services required from the Extra services list box on the right of the screen.
- 4. Select OK.
- Place the mail in the feeder.
- 6. Select Start.
- 7. A piece will feed into the mailing system and be weighed.
- 8. As it moves through the system, the thickness, length, and width of the envelope are measured.
- 9. Depending on the weight and measurements, the appropriate rate will be selected and the postage calculated.
- 10. If an item's postage cannot be calculated because of its weight or dimension, use the *attached scale* method and manually select the appropriate class.

Note:

For a detailed description of Post Office services, see the USPS website.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 79 of 367

Running a Differential Weighing mail job

Differential weighing is available on your system if it has an attached scale and you have subscribed to this feature. This option allows you to place all of the mail on the scale at once, then remove each piece, one at a time and run it through the system. The system calculates the postage for each piece of mail you remove from the scale and applies the postage to the piece as it goes through the mailing system.

For larger pieces of mail (large envelopes or packages), you can use differential weighing to have the system automatically print a tape every time you remove a piece of mail from the scale.

Before using differential weighing:

- Make sure each piece of mail weighs at least as much as the amount specified as the differential weighing threshold.
- Make sure the stack of mail is less than the capacity of the scale. If "Weight exceeds scale capacity" appears on the screen, remove pieces of mail until the message disappears.
- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select a job that uses Differential weighing or select the Weighing icon.
 - a. Select Differential weighing.
 - b. If necessary, edit the Differential weighing threshold.
 - c. Select the appropriate print option:
 - Auto tape printing select this option if you have a stack of mail made up of pieces that can't
 be processed through the system, like packages or thick flats. Each time you remove a
 piece of mail from the scale, the system will print a postage tape automatically.
 - Auto envelope printing- select this option if you have a stack of envelopes that can be run through the system. The system will automatically feed the envelope and print postage.
 - Envelope or tape printing select this option if you have a stack of mail that is a mix of
 envelopes and packages (mail pieces that can be run through the system and others that
 require tape). Each time you remove a piece of mail from the scale, you will be required to
 select either Start or Tape to print postage.
 - d. Place a stack of mail on the scale and select **OK**.
- 3. Select the class of service, for example, First Class.
- 4. Remove one piece of mail. Remove each piece of mail in a single continuous upward motion. Do not slide the mailpiece across mail on the scale.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 80 of 367

- The system calculates how much that piece of mail weighs by checking how much less the stack of mail weighs.
- 6. If the destination or ZIP code or country is needed for the piece of mail, the system will prompt you for it.
- 7. The print option you selected determines how postage will print.
 - If you selected the *Auto tape printing* option, the system will print a postage tape.
 - If you selected the *Auto envelope printing* option, place the piece of mail on the feed deck. The system will automatically feed the envelope and print postage.
 - If you selected the *Envelope or tape printing* option, select **Tape** to print a postage tape or place the piece of mail on the feed deck and select **Start**.
- 8. When the last item is removed from the scale, the system asks you if you want to print postage just in case you are removing an empty mail tray.

Editing the Differential weighing threshold

When you use the *Differential weighing method*, each piece of mail must weigh at least as much as the Differential weighing threshold.

- If you set the threshold too high, the scale will not recognize the removal of a piece of mail that falls below the weight threshold.
- If you set the threshold too low, you may be prompted to return a piece of mail to the scale. This will happen if the weight cannot be recorded properly due to bounce on the scale.

Tip:

Weigh the lightest piece of mail in the stack and set a threshold below that value.

To edit the Differential weighing threshold:

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select the **Weighing** icon.
- 3. Select Differential weighing.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 81 of 367

- 4. Select Edit threshold.
- 5. Type in the appropriate threshold.
- 6. Select **OK**. The system returns you to the weighing method dialog box.
- 7. Select **OK** to return to the Run Mail screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 82 of 367

Key in Postage

You can key in postage for any postal job.

Note:

You cannot save any job that uses key in postage as the default job. The default job must have a class selection so it will be automatically updated when postage rates change.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. You can type in the postage amount by selecting the postage amount displayed, or by selecting the **Key in Postage** button on the bottom of the screen.
- 3. Type in the postage amount and select **OK**.

Note:

When you select Key in Postage, the Class and Weighing method are set to none. If you select a Class, the system automatically updates the postage amount appropriate to the class you chose. It also sets the weighing method to match your system configuration (for example, Attached Scale if you have a separate attached scale, or WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®), or manual entry).

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 83 of 367

Running mail using a barcode scanner

If you are running a job that uses barcode labels, for example, if you using tracking services or combined barcode label jobs and if barcode also contains the text "START", the system will automatically select the **Start** button and begin processing the mail run for that job.

Similarly, if the barcode contains the text "TAPE", the system will automatically select the **Tape** button and begin printing a tape for the mail run.

Note:

This assumes there are no other required fields open on the Run Mail screen that require you to enter information or select an option. For example, if the job also requires an account, the Run Mail screen will prompt you for the account number.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 84 of 367

How to use the combined ZIP Code and Customer Reference Number barcode label

The combined ZIP Code and *Customer Reference Number* barcode label can be used as part of an *Electronic Return Receipt (ERR)* job.

Important:

The barcode scanner must be programmed if you want to scan a combined barcode label that contains the Destination ZIP Code and Customer Reference Number. Please visit www.pb.com/barcode for complete programming instructions.

- In order to use ERR, you should have a Bulk Proof of Delivery Form 5053 on file with the USPS
 and been given a 9-digit USPS Mailer ID. You will need to enter this number when using ERR. If
 not, please contact your sales representative.
- ERR is available when you use the Attached Scale or Manual Weight entry modes.

Follow the steps below to create a job that will allow you to scan the combined barcode label.

- 1. Place a piece of mail or package on the scale.
- 2. Select **Class** from the Job Properties list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select the class from the Class services list box, for example, Priority Mail Commercial.
- 4. Select the mail piece type, for example, Envelope or package.
- 5. You are prompted to type in the Destination ZIP or Zone code. Select **This is a ZIP**.
- Select the Electronic Certified special service from the Extra services list on the right. As soon as you select the service, a check mark appears in front of it and you are prompted to type in the tracking number.
- 7. Scan the next tracking label to be used. If you have used all of the labels in a series of tracking number labels, make sure you start with the top label with the lowest last 4-digits and not the bottom label with the highest last 4-digits.
- 8. Select Next.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 85 of 367

- 9. Select **Electronic Return Receipt** from the Extra services list.
- 10. Select **Skip** and then select **OK**.
- 11. Scan the combined barcode label. The Destination ZIP Code and Customer Reference Number will appear in the Job Properties list box on the left side of the screen.
- 12. Select the **Tape** button to print a tape. To print postage on the piece of mail, select the **Start** button. If you have accounting on your system, make sure you have selected an account for this job or you will not be able to print postage.
- 13. The system provides you with the option of automatically printing a receipt after every mail piece. Select the appropriate option to continue.
- 14. The system will ask you if you want to track another package. If you have finished processing mail with the selected class and service, select No to complete the job. If you want to process additional mail pieces with the selected class and service:
 - a. Select Yes, same class & service to continue.
 - b. You are prompted to type in the ZIP Code. Select **OK**.
 - c. Select Clear, and then scan the next tracking label to be used.
 - d. Select Next.
 - e. Scan the combined barcode label. The Destination ZIP Code and Customer Reference Number will appear in the Job Properties list box.
 - f. Repeat steps 11 13.
- 15. Once the job is complete, you are prompted to upload your records. Select **Yes, upload now**.

Back to top

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 86 of 367

Running mail with the Residual Rate Surcharge

The Residual Rate Surcharge allows you to process mail at a discounted rate while charging your customer back for the normal postage amount in the form of a surcharge.

Note:

The Residual Rate Surcharge is a purchasable option. Accounting is required to utilize this surcharge.

How Does the Residual Rate Surcharge Work?

Residual Rate Surcharge selections are made out of the Run Mail application. The surcharge can be used with any postal job. The Residual Rate Surcharge must be enabled (set to "Yes") for the job.

- Select the carrier and class necessary to obtain the discounted rate. This is the rate that will be used to process the mail.
- Select the billing class. The class you select should contain the normal postage rate.
- The Residual Rate Surcharge is the difference between the postal rate for the billing class and discounted postal rate used to process the mail.

EXAMPLE: If you processed the mail with the First Class Commercial Presorted rate (\$0.471), and selected First Class Letter as the billing class (\$0.48), the Residual Rate Surcharge would be \$0.009 per piece of mail (\$0.48 - \$0.471 = \$0.009).

Selecting the Residual Rate Surcharge

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Ensure that the Residual Rates Surcharge is set to **Yes**. If necessary, select **Residual Rate Surcharge** in the Job Properties list box to toggle between Yes and No.
- 3. Select the carrier, class and special services you want to use to process the mail.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 87 of 367

- 4. Select **Billing Class** in the Job Properties list box.
 - a. Select the class of postage you want to use to bill your customer.
 - b. Select **OK**.
- 5. Select **Start** to begin running mail.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 88 of 367

Running Mail with the DI900™/DI950™ Inserting System Interface

The inserting system interface enables communication between DI900™/DI950™ FastPac® inserting systems and Connect+ Series systems via an Ethernet/LAN connection. When the inserting interface is in place, the inserter feeds mailpieces onto the mailing and shipping system feed deck for metering.

Note:

- Mail pieces must be sealed by the inserter.
- On Connect+ 1000systems, all mail pieces in a job must be identical.
- The inserter sends start and stop signals to the mailing and shipping system. The mailing and shipping system can send error messages back to the inserter to stop feeding.
- If the mailing and shipping system is overcome with mail, it can pause the inserter to prevent it from
 producing any additional mail pieces, process the mail pieces on the feeder, then signal the
 inserter to resume once it has caught up.
- When the mailing system is in maintenance mode, it will pause the inserter, then signal the inserter to resume once maintenance is complete.

For more information about the DI900™/DI950™ FastPac® inserting system, refer to the refer to the documentation provided with the inserter.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 89 of 367

Running mail with SendSuite Xpress™ or Ascent™

When a Connect+ Series system is interfaced with SendSuite Xpress or Ascent, the shipping application sends a shipping job to the mailing system.

Note:

Accounting must be turned off and user logins must be disabled on your mailing and shipping system before SendSuite Xpress or Ascent can successfully send a shipping job.

The Start and Tape buttons are replaced by a "Printing Remotely Controlled" message while the shipping application sends the job properties to the system. There are two types of jobs sent from the shipping system: trip and batch.

- If a trip job is sent, the mailing and shipping system displays the postage amount and changes the
 job to Key in Postage mode. The Start and Tape buttons remain unavailable. Running mail is
 remotely controlled by the shipping application and your postage is printed on a tape or tapes.
 Non-postal job properties (graphic ads, text messages, etc.) cannot be added to a trip job.
- If a batch job is sent, the Start and Tape buttons become available once the job is received by the
 mailing and shipping system. You can add or edit non-postal job properties, and print to either
 envelopes or tapes.

Lock spend

If "lock spend" option is checked in SendSuite Xpress or Ascent, printing (spending) on the mailing and shipping system is locked; this means that the Start and Tape buttons are not available on the Run Mail screen when a postal job is selected. You will be able to run non-postal jobs in lock spend mode. All other system features and functions remain available. Once a job run is complete, the system will return to lock spend mode.

For more information about SendSuite Xpress or Ascent, refer to the help system provided with the application.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 90 of 367

Checking or changing the postage amount on the Run Mail screen

The system calculates the postage amount based on the weight of the mail piece and the class you selected for this job.

You can however override the amount of postage by selecting either the postage amount or the *Key in Postage* button on the bottom of the Run Mail screen and typing in a different amount. If you save this job with the manually entered postage amount, the job will no longer contain the class information so you will have to type in the postage value every time you run this job again.

It is recommended that you save each job with a class so that when the postal and carrier rates are updated, your job postage amount will also be automatically updated to reflect the new rates.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 91 of 367

Changing the envelope or tape quantity

Specifying the number of envelopes to print allows you to count down and stop the machine after a certain number of pieces have been processed. For example, you might want to remove a certain number from the stacker and place in a separate tray or bag.

To change the number of envelopes or tapes to print, toggle between the Envelope quantity or Tape quantity tab on the *Run Mail* screen.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the Run Mail screen.
- 2. Select the **Envelope quantity** or **Tape quantity** tab on the Run Mail screen.
- 3. Select the envelope or tape Quantity box.
- 4. Select one of the preset quantities or enter a different number of envelopes or tapes. Select **OK**.

Note:

The maximum envelope quantity is 10,000. The maximum tape quantity is 100.

5. Select the **Start** button for envelopes, or **Tape** button for tapes. The system will stop once it has processed the number of envelopes/tapes you specified.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 92 of 367

Changing the Date

To change the format of the date, omit the date entirely, or to advance the date:

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select anywhere within envelope on the screen or select the date value.
- 3. Select the **Print Date** option on the Edit envelope screen.
- 4. Select the appropriate date option:
 - · Don't print date
 - · Print today's date
 - Today + 1
 - Select from calendar
- Select the correct format option and then select **OK**.
 If you **Select from calendar**, a calendar appears showing several days in advance. The number of days in advance shown depends on the country. Select the appropriate date from the calendar, then select **OK**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 93 of 367

Changing the machine speed

To change the speed of your machine:

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select **Machine speed** from the *Job Properties* list box on the left side of the Run Mail screen.
- 3. Select the appropriate setting (Normal, Reduced, Slow, Very Slow)
- 4. Select OK.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 94 of 367

Printing a sample mail piece

Run a sample mail piece to make sure your job will run and that all the elements (address, graphics, inscriptions etc.) are positioned correctly.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select the **Options** button.
- 3. Select Print a sample piece....
- 4. Select **Start** or **Tape**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 95 of 367

Counting mail

You can count how many pieces of mail you run:

- 1. From the Run Mail screen, select the counter button at the bottom of the screen. The button is labeled either as Resettable counter, or Total pieces depending on the job type.
 - Postal jobs:
 - Total Pieces the total number of mail pieces and the postage amount for the current job.
 - Resettable counter the total number of pieces run and the total postage amount since you reset the counter.
 - · Seal only jobs:
 - Total Pieces total number of seal only pieces.
 - Resettable counter the total number of seal only pieces run since you reset the counter.
 - · Non-postal jobs:
 - Total Pieces total number of non-postal only pieces.
 - Resettable counter the total number of non-postal only pieces run since you reset the counter.
- 2. You can reset the resettable counter (or clear the batch count) by selecting the **Reset to Zero** button.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 96 of 367

Adding graphics, return addresses, messages, and inscriptions to your mail

You can add customized graphics and logos, messages, and inscriptions on envelopes or tapes. By adding marketing, advertising, and other promotional messages, you can now design an outer envelope with content that reinforces the internal message.

You place these images in the Transpromotional zone on the envelope or tape.



You can also have the option of printing date and time stamps on incoming mail.

You make changes to you envelope by selecting anywhere within envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the **Edit envelope** link. All of selections for modifying the envelope are contained in a list box on the left side of the Edit Envelope screen. Note that the options available will depend on how your system is configured and whether your system has color capability.

- · Changing or Adding a Graphic
- Changing or Adding an Inscription
- Changing or Adding a Text Message or Return Address
- Printing Date and Time Stamps

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 97 of 367

Graphic ad

A graphic image can be positioned between the return address area and the postal indicia. You can also purchase ad graphics or *download your own*.

Ad graphics:

- Are images only
- Must be downloaded into the system by connecting to Pitney Bowes.

If you want to print an ad that contains only a written message, use the Text Message option.

Return address

The return address is positioned at the left edge of the envelope.

The return address option allows you to type in a return address. If you use more than one return address, save each address in a different job.

Changing or adding a graphic

To change or add a graphic ad that is already downloaded or present on your system:

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is open and selected on the Run Mail screen
- 2. Select anywhere within envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the **Edit envelope** link.
- 3. Select the **Graphic Ad** option from the list box.
- 4. You have several options available for displaying the available graphics. Refer to *Viewing* available graphics for details.
- 5. If there is no graphic currently displayed on the envelope, select one of the available graphic ads displayed on the Edit envelope screen. A check mark appears next to the graphic you select.
- 6. To add a graphic, refer to *Adding a graphic*.
- 7. To change the position of the graphic, refer to *Positioning a graphic/text message*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 98 of 367

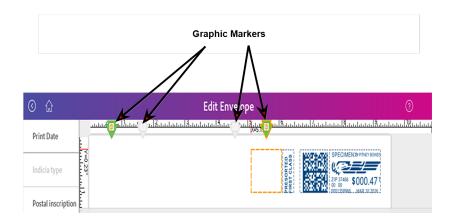
- 8. To remove the graphic, simply deselect it.
- 9. Select **OK** when you are done.
- 10. To verify that the envelope prints correctly, *print a sample piece*.

Viewing available graphics

- 1. Select anywhere within the envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the **Edit envelope** link.
 - Select the Graphic ad option from the list box on the left of the **Edit envelope** screen.
- 2. The graphic images are displayed in the order in which they have been downloaded, with the newest appearing first.
- 3. If your system has full color capability there will be 3 color filter buttons located directly under the image list.
 - By selecting one of the filter buttons you can choose to display only those images that are in color, mono (black), or postal red. If your system has a mono and postal red printer, there will only be 2 filter option buttons. Systems having only the postal red printer do not have any filter option buttons since all the graphics are postal red.
- 4. A graphic image which has a checkmark in front of it has been selected for placement in the Transpromotional zone of the mail piece.

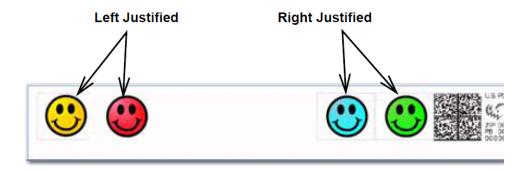
Adding a graphic

1. As soon as you open the Graphic Ad screen, a series of markers appear along the top of the envelope.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 99 of 367

- The number of markers that appear depend on the size of the envelope or tape. A #10 envelope and has four graphic markers.
- The markers are grouped as left justified (left edge of the envelope) or right justified (next to the indicia). The markers define the locations for the graphic images.
- 2. To select a graphic, choose the marker, then select the graphic from the list (a checkmark appears in the checkbox).
 - If the zone is empty, by default the right justified marker next to the indicia is automatically selected and the first graphic will appear in this location.
 - To remove the graphic, simply de-select it so that the checkmark is removed from the checkbox.
- 3. Select **OK** to place the graphic on the envelope. The Run Mail screen appears with the graphic displayed on the envelope.
- 4. For a #10 envelope template you can add up to 4 graphics: 2 will be right justified and two will be left justified.



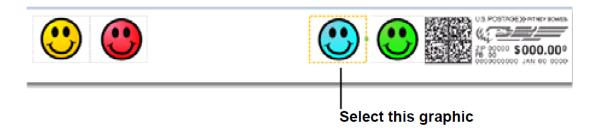
- 5. If you try to add an image and there is not enough room, the system will display a message telling you to either remove an existing image or *change the size of the envelope*.
- 6. To change the horizontal position of a graphic items, refer to *Positioning a graphic/message*.
- 7. If during a mail run an envelope has the maximum number of images it can accommodate and the size of the envelope decreases (for example during a WOW job), the graphics and/or messages will be dropped in a specific sequence. Refer to *How markers are dropped/added* for the order in which the markers are dropped.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 100 of 367

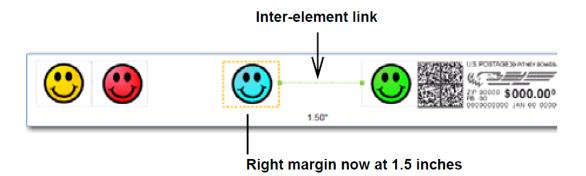
Positioning a graphic/message

You can move a graphic horizontally within the Transpromotional zone using the Position buttons. These buttons allow you to move the graphic to the left or right. The allowed distance you can move a graphic depends on the envelope/tape size and the number of graphics already in the zone. If you attempt to move the graphic more than the maximum allowed, a warning is displayed.

- 1. When you select an image, a border appears around it and a dot appears on the left or right depending on whether it is left or right justified.
- 2. Select the graphic you want to move. For this example, we select the right justified blue graphic.

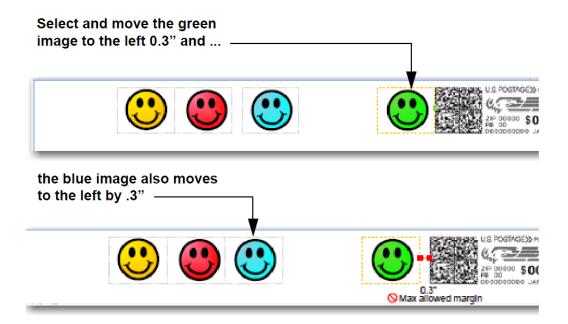


3. You can move the graphic to the left either by tapping the Margin button and entering the the distance, or by tapping the left position button - a single tap moves the image 0.1 inch. Press and hold for more than 2 seconds and the distance increments 0.5 inch every additional second. If you exceed the allowable distance, the green inter-element link turns from green to red.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 101 of 367

4. The graphics within a group (right-justified or left-justified) are connected to one another so that moving one also affects the other. In the example below, moving the right justified green graphic also moves the blue graphic since they are both right justified (note that this has no affect on the left justified yellow and red graphics).



How markers are added or dropped

The diagram below shows the default order in which non-postal elements (graphic images, text messages, return addresses) are dropped from the Transpromotional zone if the envelope size changes during a WOW mail run and an element(s) will not fit. The postal elements are restored in the reverse order.



You can specify which images or messages you do not want dropped. The default drop-order will remain the same but the image or message you select will be skipped during the drop. Refer to *Changing the image/message drop order*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 102 of 367

Notes on drop order:

- When a right justified element is dropped, the other right justified images shift to the right. The distance of the shift is equal to the size of the image plus its margin.
- When a left justified element is dropped, the other left justified images do not shift or change position.

Changing the image/message drop order

To select an image/message you do not want dropped during a WOW mail run:

- 1. Select anywhere within the envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the Edit envelope link.
- 2. Select the **Print element drop order** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.
- 3. The graphics and messages currently in the Transpromotional zone are listed in the left Auto drop order list box.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 103 of 367

- 4. Select the image/message from the Auto drop order list and then select **Move**. This image/message now appears in the Do not drop list in the top position on the right.
- Select OK.
- 6. To remove an image from the Do not drop list, select it and then select **Move back**.

Adding a new graphic using MyGraphics™ Designer

Your Connect+ Series system has the flexibility to print customized messages and graphics on the blank portion of your envelope while it's printing postage. The MyGraphics Designer tool from Pitney Bowes provides a simple way to create and transfer customized graphics to your mailing system.

- You run MyGraphics Designer on a PC separate from your mailing system.
- The color of a graphic printed by your mailing system is based on the printer in the system and the color of the initial image.

Once you create a graphic and upload it using MyGraphics Designer, you can download it onto your mailing system by *checking for rates and updates*.

Changing or adding an inscription

To change or add a *postal inscription*:

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select anywhere within the envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the Edit envelope link.
- 3. Select the **Postal Inscription** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.
- 4. If you have selected a class that requires an inscription (for example, PresortXtra, FirstClass Letter, Return Service Requested) the option **Based on mailing class and services...** is automatically selected. You cannot deselect a required inscription, or choose a different inscription.
- 5. To select an inscription manually, select the option for **Select from list** and choose one of the available inscriptions.
- 6. If you do not want any inscription to appear, select **Don't print postal inscription**.
- 7. Select **OK** when done.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 104 of 367

Postal inscriptions

Postal inscriptions are text printed on the envelope to identify to the Post Office which class of service should be used. Inscriptions:

- can be selected automatically by the system when the class is selected in Run Mail
- can be specified manually if you wish to print a specific inscription
- can be set to not print

Changing or Adding a Text Message or Return Address

To change or add a text message:

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select anywhere within the envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the Edit envelope link.
- 3. Select the **Text messages and Return addresses** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.
- 4. You have several options available for displaying the available graphics. Refer to *Viewing Available Messages/Addresses* for details.
- If there is no message/address currently displayed on the envelope, select one of the available messages displayed on the Edit envelope screen. A check mark appears next to the message you select.
- 6. To add a message, refer to Adding a Message/Return Address.
- 7. To create a new text message or return address, or to change the font or color of the message, refer to *Creating a New Message or Return Address*.
- 8. To change the position of the message, refer to *Positioning a Graphic/Text Message*.
- 9. To remove the message/address, simply deselect it.
- 10. Select **OK** when you are done.
- 11. To verify that the envelope prints correctly, *print a sample piece*.

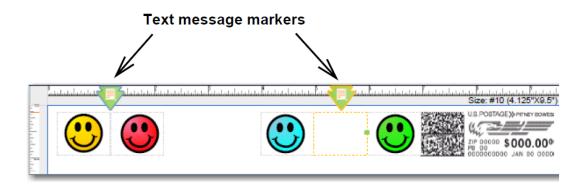
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 105 of 367

Viewing available messages/return addresses

- 1. Select anywhere within the envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the **Edit envelope** link.
- 2. Select the **Text message and Return address** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.
- 3. The messages are displayed in the order in which they have been created, with the newest appearing first.
- 4. If your system has full color capability there will be 3 color filter buttons located directly under the image list.
 - By selecting one of the filter buttons you can choose to display only those messages that are in color, mono (black), or postal red. If your system has a mono and postal red printer, there will only be 2 filter option buttons. Systems having only the postal red printer do not have any filter option buttons since all the messages/addresses are postal red.
- 5. A message/address which has a checkmark in front of it has been selected for placement in the Transpromotional zone of the mail piece.

Adding a message or return address

1. As soon as you open the Text message screen, text message markers appears at the top of the envelope. The number of markers depend on the size of the envelope or tape.



2. The example shown here corresponds to a # 10 envelope and has two Text message markers. If graphic images are present, the markers are positioned between the graphic markers as shown here.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 106 of 367

- 3. As with graphic markers, the text markers are left justified or right justified. The markers define the locations for return addresses or other text messages.
- 4. The methods for choosing a text message or a return address are the same as for graphic images. Refer to *Adding a graphic*.
- 5. To create a new message, refer to *Creating a new message or return address*.

Creating a new message or return address

- 1. Select anywhere within the envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the **Edit envelope** link.
- 2. Select the **Text message & Return address** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.
- Select the New link directly under the Text message list box. Type in the message in the dialog box. If you use the on-screen keyboard to type in the text, select Close and then Save when complete.

Note:

The number of characters per line depends on the size of the font (see step 5). For Arial 10 point, the limit is 100 characters per line.

- 4. Type in the name of the Text message when prompted and then select **OK**.
- 5. To edit the text message, select Manage.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 107 of 367

- 6. To change the font of the text message, select Format.
 - a. The font tab allows you to select the font (eg., Arial), style (bold, italic, underline), size and font color.
 - b. For font color, you can select black, postal red, choose from a standard set of colors, or create a custom color.
 - Standard colors: select from a set of colors that correspond to a particular pre-set RGB value.
 - Custom colors: Create a customized RGB color by typing in color values between 0 and 255 (where 0 removes all traces of the color and 255 adds the color completely) in the RGB fields.
 - Alternatively, you can drag the cross hair in the color spectrum box and slide the pointer bar up and down the saturation selection bar. As you make adjustments the corresponding RGB values update and display on the screen.
- 7. To adjust the horizontal or vertical alignment of the message or return address, select the **Text Block** tab and select the appropriate alignment options.
- 8. To remove the message/return address from the envelope, deselect it.

Note:

If you deselect a message, in order for the message to reappear in the list, you must select the color filter button that corresponds to the color of the message. For example, if you created the message in postal red, select the postal red filter button to redisplay all of the messages done in postal red.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 108 of 367

Changing envelope size

To change the type of envelope and/or the items to include on the envelope for printing follow the steps here.

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button from the **Home** screen. Select anywhere within envelope on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select the **Envelope size** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.
- 3. Select the appropriate size (#10, flat, Post card, or custom)
- 4. Select OK.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 109 of 367

Changing the envelope print area

You can change the top vertical and right horizontal edges of the printable area on the envelope. By adjusting the top vertical edge, you move all of the elements (indicia, address, graphics or inscriptions) on the envelope up or down.

Adjusting the right horizontal edge moves all right-justified elements to the left or right. These elements include any item on the left side of the indicia, for example, a graphic ad, inscription or text message.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the Run Mail screen.
- 2. Select anywhere within envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the Edit envelope link.
- 3. Select the **Print position** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.
- 4. Set the offset value from the top edge of the envelope. The offset range from the top of the envelope is 0.24 to 0.51 inch (6.09 to 12.95 mm).
 - a. Select the + or button once to increase/decrease the value by 0.05 inch (or 1 mm).
 - b. To continue increasing/decreasing the value hold the + or button for at least 2 seconds. For each second you hold the button, the value increases/decreases by 0.1 inch (10mm).
- 5. Set the offset value from the right edge and left edge of the envelope using the same method used for setting the top edge offset. The right margin offset range is 0.06 to 1.0 inch (1.52 to 25.4 mm).

Note:

The offset values are dependent on the country. This value is for US.

6. Select **OK** when done.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 110 of 367

Changing the color print quality

This option is only available if your system has color capability.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the Run Mail screen.
- 2. Select anywhere within envelope on the screen.
- 3. Select the **Color print quality** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.
- 4. Select the color ink print quality setting:
 - Good
 - Better
 - Best (slowest printing speed)
- 5. Select the Envelope material.
 - · Regular Wove
 - Recycled
 - Glossy (requires the most drying time)

Ink print quality	Envelope material available for selection	
Good	Regular Wove, Recycled.	
	Regular Wove is selected by default.	
Better	Regular Wove, Recycled.	
	Regular Wove is selected by default.	
Best	Regular Wove, Recycled, Glossy	
	Note that by selecting glossy, you will slow down the throughput of your system. If you have selected a faster speed that the printer can accommodate, choosing the Best option here will override that setting. Refer to <i>Changing the Machine Speed</i> for more information.	

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 111 of 367

What are tracking services?

The United States Post Office (USPS) provides three types of tracking services:

- Delivery Confirmation shows you when the postal carrier delivered the mail.
- Signature Confirmation shows you who signed for the mail.
- Certified Mail provides you with proof that you mailed the item.

Each of these services has its own tracking number labels. Using preprinted tracking number labels provided by Pitney Bowes, you can electronically process and submit records for the three types of USPS Confirmation Services to the Pitney Bowes Data Center.

Postage calculation for confirmation services

Your system automatically calculates the postage amount based on the class and tracking service. You cannot change this postage value.

Discounts for confirmation services

In many cases when you use any of these services with your mailing system and uploads the records you get a discount on the cost of the service. In some cases, like adding Electronic Delivery Confirmation to a Priority letter, you only pay the postage required for Priority mail.

Sending your records to Pitney Bowes

Whenever you complete a job using a tracking service, the system prompts you to upload the records. In order to automatically upload your records, your system must have a full-time LAN connection.

Tracking information on the Internet

Depending on how your system is configured, you can track your mail through your account on www.pitneybowes.com You can also track your mail by going to the Postal Service's web site at www.usps.com.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 112 of 367

Delivery Confirmation

Delivery Confirmation allows you to verify the date and time of delivery of your mail pieces or, if the delivery was unsuccessful, the date and time of the delivery attempt.

The service is currently available for First Class Mail packages, Priority Mail and Package Services parcels, which include Parcel Post, Library, Media Mail and Bound Printed Matter.

You may combine Delivery Confirmation with other services such as COD, insured mail, registered mail, parcel airlift (PAL) or special handling.

There is no charge for Delivery Confirmation when you ship by Priority Mail and provide an electronic file to the Postal Service.

Signature Confirmation

The USPS also offers a signature proof of delivery service— Signature Confirmation. This provides mailers with the text name of the recipient, along with the date, time and ZIP Code.

This service is currently available for First Class Mail packages, Priority Mail, and Package Services parcels which include Parcel Post, Library, Media Mail and Bound Printed Matter. For security purposes, digitized signatures are not publicly displayed on the web site.

You can get actual signatures from the USPS by fax or mail. This service meets the needs of mailers who require a signature for high-value shipments, or who are specifically concerned with avoiding fraud.

You may combine Signature Confirmation with special services. As an add-on service to Delivery Confirmation, there is an additional cost when you upload (send) the transaction using your mailing system. The additional cost is greater if your local Post Office handles the transaction.

Certified Mail

Certified Mail is a service offered by the United States Postal Service® for a fee in addition to postage. Sending Certified Mail provides a delivery record that the Postal Service keeps for two years.

You can choose the Return Receipt service when you use Certified Mail. For an additional fee the Return Receipt assures that you have legal proof of receipt of the communication: The Postal Service sends the green return receipt postcard back to you, the sender. This is a very useful tool for collecting funds,

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 113 of 367

recovering checks and making legal notifications. A return receipt for Certified Mail serves as a legal document proving the date and time when the recipient took possession of the mail piece.

If you decide you want a return receipt after you mailed your certified mail piece, go to your local post office and ask for this service. The post office will give you a scanned image of the recipient's signature, along with the date of delivery. Be sure to provide the 22-digit barcode used on the mail piece.

You can eliminate the traditional "Green Card" and save money as well by using the *Electronic Return Receipt (ERR)* option on your system.

Selecting a tracking service

Tracking services are available when you use the Attached Scale, or Manual Weight entry method. The following steps are based on using Priority class and the Electronic Delivery Confirmation service. Your procedure may vary slightly depending on the class and service you choose. If you are using Electronic Certified service with the Electronic Return Receipt (ERR) option, refer to How to use Electronic Return Receipt (ERR).

- 1. Place the piece of mail or package on the scale.
- 2. Select Class from the *Job Properties* list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select the class from the Class services list box, in this example, Priority Mail Retail.
- 4. Select the mail piece type, in this example, Envelope or package.
- 5. You are prompted to type in the Destination ZIP or Zone code. Type in the ZIP code and then select **This is a ZIP**.
- 6. Select the special service from the Extra services list on the right. For this example, use Electronic Delivery Confirmation. As soon as you select the service, a check mark appears in front of it and you are prompted to type in the tracking number.
 - If this is the first time you are entering a confirmation service, the field for the tracking number is blank and you need to type in the entire number. If you have a barcode scanner, you can scan in the number.
 - If you have used all of the labels in a series of tracking number labels, make sure you start with the top label with the lowest last 4-digits and not the bottom label with the highest last 4-digits.
 - If you have used the confirmation service before, the next tracking number (in the series of tracking number labels) appears, minus the last digit. You will be prompted to type in the last digit of the tracking number that is to be used on the mail piece.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 114 of 367

- 7. If you have *enabled tracking services prompts*, the envelope that displays on the Run Mail screen refreshes once you type in the tracking number showing where you should place the tracking number label.
- 8. Put the label on the envelope as prompted by the system, then select **Next** and then **OK**.
- 9. Select the **Tape** key to print a tape. To print postage on a piece of mail, select the **Start** button.
- 10. If the job you are running is set up to process a single tape or mail piece, the system will ask you if you want to track another mail piece. It also provides you with the option of automatically printing a receipt after every mail piece.
- 11. Once the job is complete, you are prompted to upload your records. It is recommended that you upload all your records after every job.

Electronic Return Receipt (ERR)

You can eliminate the traditional "Green Card" and save money as well by using the Electronic Return Receipt (ERR) option available on your system. This option is available when using the Electronic Certified Service.

When you select this option, all return receipt information required by the USPS for a particular mail piece is sent electronically to our Data Center.

Instead of receiving the green receipt postcard, you track your certified ERR mail piece at the Pitney Bowes or USPS web site.

In addition, if you subscribe to the service, you can enter a customer reference that links the package ID (barcode number) to the recipient. This information field allows you to identify the recipient in any way you choose: for example, by name, invoice number, unique customer ID, etc. The customer reference can be up to 14 alphanumeric characters long. An Electronic Return Receipt provides the same proof of mailing and receipt as the traditional Certified Mail Return Receipt, otherwise known as the Green Card, less the hard copy signature. The delivery tracking system stores the transaction and signature electronically should you ever need it.

Refer to How to Use Electronic Return Receipt Service for detailed information on using ERR.

USPS® Mailer ID

This 9-digit number is required when using Electronic Return Receipt. To get this number, you need to submit Form 5053, Bulk Proof of Delivery to the USPS.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 115 of 367

Customer Reference Number

When using Electronic Return Receipt (ERR) your system prompts you to enter a customer reference number. You can use the customer reference to identify the mail piece recipient in any way you choose: by name, by a unique customer ID, by invoice number, and so on.

The customer reference can be up to 14 alphanumeric characters long and is included with the mail piece transaction data your system uploads. This feature greatly enhances mail piece tracking by linking the reference number to the package ID (tracking number).

How to use Electronic Return Receipt (ERR)

Tracking services are available when you use the *Attached Scale* or *Manual Weight* entry method. The following steps are based on using Priority class and the Electronic Certified service with Electronic Return Receipt.

In order to use ERR, you must submit Form 5053, Bulk Proof of Delivery to the USPS. You will then be provided with a *9-digit USPS Mailer ID*. You need to enter this number when using ERR. The following procedure is an example of how to use ERR.

- 1. Place the piece of mail or package on the scale.
- 2. Select Class from the *Job Properties* list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select the class from the Class services list box, in this example, Priority Mail Retail.
- 4. Select the mail piece type, in this example, Envelope or package.
- 5. You are prompted to type in the Destination ZIP or Zone code. Type in the ZIP code and then select **This is a ZIP**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 116 of 367

- 6. Select the Electronic Certified special service from the Extra services list on the right. As soon as you select the service, a check mark appears in front of it and you are prompted to type in the tracking number.
 - a. If this is the first time you are entering a confirmation service, the field for the tracking number is blank and you need to type in the entire number. If you have a barcode scanner, you can scan in the number.
 - b. If you have used all of the labels in a series of tracking number labels, make sure you start with the top label with the lowest last 4-digits and not the bottom label with the highest last 4-digits.
 - c. If you have used the confirmation service before, the next tracking number (in the series of tracking number labels) appears, minus the last digit. You will be prompted to type in the last digit of the tracking number that is to be used on the mail piece.
- 7. If you have *enabled tracking services prompts*, the envelope that displays on the Run Mail screen refreshes once you type in the tracking number showing where you should place the tracking number label. Apply the tracking label and select **Next**.
- 8. Select **Electronic Return Receipt** from the Extra services list.
- 9. You are prompted to type in the *Customer Reference number* and the 9-digit *USPS® Mailer ID* in their dialog boxes.
- 10. Once you type in the Customer Reference number and USPS Mailer ID, select **OK**.
- 11. Select **OK** to confirm the class and service.
- 12. Select the **Tape** key to print a tape. To print postage on a piece of mail, select the **Start** button. If you have Accounting on your system, make sure you have selected an account for this job or you will not be able to print a tape or envelope.
- 13. The system will ask you if you want to track another mail piece. It also provides you with the option of automatically printing a receipt after every mail piece.
- 14. Once the job is complete, you are prompted to upload your records. It is recommended that you upload all your records after every job.

Back to top

Creating a combined barcode label job

The combined barcode label was created specifically for Electronic Return Receipt (ERR) customers. You should create a job if you want to use these labels.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 117 of 367

- In order to use ERR, you should have a Bulk Proof of Delivery Form 5053 on file with the USPS
 and been given a 9-digit USPS Mailer ID. You will need to enter this number when using ERR. If
 not, please contact your sales representative.
- ERR is available when you use the Attached Scale or Manual Weight entry modes.

Important:

Turn off all tracking services prompts, except for Print Receipt, before creating and running mail with a combined barcode label job. If necessary, the prompts can be turned on again later.

Follow the steps below to create a job that will allow you to scan the combined barcode label. Setting up the job in this manner will ensure you can process mail as quickly as possible.

- 1. Place a piece of mail or package on the scale.
- 2. Select **Class** from the Job Properties list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select the class from the Class services list box, for example, First Class.
- 4. Select the mail piece type, for example, Letter.
- 5. Select the **Electronic Certified** special service from the Extra services list on the right. As soon as you select the service, a check mark appears in front of it
- 6. You are prompted to enter a ZIP Code. Scan the combined barcode label and select **OK**.
- 7. Scan the next tracking label to be used.
 - If you have used all of the labels in a series of tracking number labels, make sure you start with the top label with the lowest last 4-digits and not the bottom label with the highest last 4-digits.
- 8. Select Electronic Return Receipt from the Extra services list.
- 9. Select OK.
- 10. Scan the combined barcode label. The Customer Reference Number will appear in the Job Properties list box on the left side of the screen.
- 11. Save the job.
 - a. Select Save as.
 - b. Enter a new job name (e.g. ERR Job) and then select **OK**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 118 of 367

12. Select the **Tape** button to print a tape. To print postage on the piece of mail, select the **Start** button.

Note:

If you have accounting on your system, make sure you have selected an account for this job or you will not be able to print postage.

- 13. Remove the piece of mail or package from the scale. Apply the tracking label, combined barcode label and postage tape.
- 14. The system provides you with the option of automatically printing a receipt after every mail piece. Select the appropriate option to continue.
- 15. The system will ask you if you want to track another package. Select **No** to complete the job.

Running mail with a combined barcode label job

Follow the steps below to run mail with a job that will allow you to scan the combined barcode label.

- 1. Place a piece of mail or package on the scale.
- 2. Open the combined barcode label job (e.g. ERR Job). If the job is already open, select **Reload**.
- 3. Scan the next tracking label to be used.
- 4. Scan the combined barcode label. The Destination ZIP Code and Customer Reference Number will appear in the Job Properties list box on the left side of the screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 119 of 367

5. Select the **Tape** button to print a tape. To print postage on the piece of mail, select the **Start** button.

Note:

If you have accounting on your system, make sure you have selected an account for this job or you will not be able to print postage.

- 6. Remove the piece of mail or package from the scale. Apply the tracking label, combined barcode label and postage tape.
- 7. The system will ask you if you want to track another piece or package. If you have finished processing mail with the selected class and service, select **No** to complete the job.

If you want to process additional mail pieces with the selected class and service:

Important:

Do not place the piece of mail or package on the scale until the ZIP Code prompt appears.

- a. Select Yes, same class & service to continue.
- b. You are prompted to enter a ZIP Code. Place the piece of mail or package on the scale.
- c. Scan the combined barcode label and select **OK**.
- d. Scan the next tracking label to be used.
- e. Scan the combined barcode label. The Customer Reference Number will appear in the Job Properties list box.
- 8. Repeat steps 5 7.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 120 of 367

Using PresortXtra services

If you already have PresortXtra, refer to Running a PresortXtra job.

What is Presort Xtra?

Pitney Bowes PresortXtra is a convenient presort solution for low volume mailers. Pitney Bowes does the work, you keep the savings. Save between 6-15% on your First Class Mail, get free mail pickup, Delivery Point Validation and Move Update services. High-volume mailers barcode and presort their mail to save on postage. With the Pitney Bowes PresortXtra you too can benefit from the U.S. Postal Service workshare discounts, even if you don't send huge volumes of mail.

What do I need to qualify/use PresortXtra?

First, you need to make sure you qualify for this service.

Qualifications for PresortXtra service

You need to make sure you have qualifying mail volumes for the PresortXtra service. You start the program by completing and signing the required program documents provided by your Pitney Bowes sales representative.

Qualifying mail volumes include:

- **Flats:** 50 or more per pickup if a letter customer. 150 or more per pickup if not a letter customer.
- Letters: Minimum required daily volumes of 500+ pieces per day. Single pickups of 1,000 or more per pickup

Next, verify that the necessary PresortXtra rates and inscriptions are on your Connect+ Seriessystem.

- Refer to Viewing the status of rates and updates.
- Check the Rates and software and Features and graphics tabs.

Third, go to Setting up PresortXtra Service jobs.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 121 of 367

Setting up PresortXtra service jobs

In order to use PresortXtra services, make sure the necessary PresortXtra rates and inscriptions are on your Connect+ Series system.

This provides instructions on how to create PresortXtra jobs for First Class Flats and Letters within the PresortXtra service.

- 1. Select the **Run Mail** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Carrier** from the Postal Information section in the Job Properties list box on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Pitney Bowes PresortXtra.
- 4. Select the appropriate PresortXtra option, for example, First Class Flats. The PresortXtra options include:
 - First Class Letter
 - First Class Flats
 - Standard Mail Letter
 - · Standard Mail Non Profit Letter
- 5. Select the appropriate Ad/service from within the Extra Services selection box on the right side of the screen. If you are using your own address verification or address cleansing process, do not select any Extra Service option:
 - **Return Service Requested** Select this if you want your mail piece to be returned with the new address. There is no fee.
 - Address Service Requested Select this if you want your mail pieces to be forwarded to the updated address. Written notification is provided back to the sender for \$0.50 each. After 12 months, the pieces are returned without a fee.
- 6. Depending on the option selected in step 5, the inscription (if applicable) appears on the envelope screen.
- 7. Advance the date by selecting the date on the Edit Envelope screen.
- 8. Select the appropriate date option, for example, **Today + 1 day**. Select **OK**. The Run Mail screen displays with the advanced date shown.
- 9. If you need to add a Drop Ship Authorization number, refer to Adding the Drop Ship Authorization

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 122 of 367

meter text.

10. Go to Saving the Presort Xtra job.

Adding the Drop Ship Authorization meter text

This procedure describes how to add the Drop Ship Authorization number. This number may be required when *Setting up a PresortXtra job*. You get this number from the USPS. This will print on two lines as:

"D/S AUTH #### "

"MAILED AT CITY STATE"

If you need to add a Drop Ship Authorization number, you should save it as part of your PresortXtra job.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate PresortXtra job is open and selected on the Run Mail screen.
- 2. Select anywhere within the envelope on the Run Mail screen. You can also select the Edit envelope link.
- 3. Select the **Text Message** option from the list box on the left of the Edit envelope screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 123 of 367

- 4. If you have already created a Drop Ship Authorization number, select it from the messages displayed on the Edit envelope screen. The message is then positioned in a default location on the envelope.
 - a. To add a new message, select the **New text message** button.
 - b. For line 1, type in the D/S number, for example: D/S AUTH 12345
 - c. For line 2, enter "Mailed at" followed by the city and state; for example, Mailed at Hartford CT.

Note:

- The city and state that you are entering into the meter text should be the city and state of the Presort Services Processing facility. If the city and state is too long it can be substituted with the first three digits of the processing facility's zip code. For example, Mailed at 061. If you are not certain what processing facility this customer will be using you can contact the Mail Services Customer Center at 1-866-624-5724.
- The maximum number of characters you can enter on a text message line is 20.
- 5. Select **OK** when complete.

For more information on creating and editing messages, refer to Changing adding a text message.

Running a PresortXtra job

For more information on PresortXtra, refer to *Using PresortXtra services*.

Select the PresortXtra job from the job tab on the top of the Run Mail screen. If the PresortXtra job
does not appear there, select the Open a Job tab along the top of the screen and select from a list
of saved jobs. If you need to create a new PresortXtra job, refer to Setting Up PresortXtra Service
Jobs.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 124 of 367

- 2. Clear the batch count for the PresortXtra job by selecting the **Counter** button at the bottom of the Run Mail screen.
 - a. In the Postal Job counter dialog box, select **Resettable**. Resettable is the total number of pieces run and the total postage amount since you reset the counter.
 - b. Select Reset to Zero.
 - c. Select OK.

Note:

Be sure and clear the batch counter between scheduled pickups.

- 3. Load envelopes and press the **Start** button, or if printing to tape, press the **Tape** button.
- 4. When complete, print the batch counter report:
 - a. Select the Home icon.
 - b. Select the **Reports** button.
 - c. Select the Funds Reports.
 - d. Print the funds report on a tape or envelope.

Saving the PresortXtra job

To save the PresortXtra settings as a job:

- 1. Once you have selected the PresortXtra settings, select **Save As** on the top of the Run Mail screen. You are prompted to *Save as job name*.
- 2. Select the keyboard icon and type in the job name. You can enter up to 16 alphanumeric characters.
- 3. Select **OK**. The new job appears as a tab at the top of the Run Mail screen.
- 4. To save other PresortXtra jobs, select **Carrier** again as described in *Setting up the PresortXtra job* and repeat the process.
- 5. Run a sample mail piece to verify that the proper inscription appears on the envelope or tape.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 125 of 367

- 6. To upload the single mail piece data, go to the Home screen and select the **Settings** button. The Settings screen displays.
 - a. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
 - b. Select Postal Information Upload.
 - c. Select Upload postal information now.
- 7. Fax the sample mail piece to the Mail Services Customer Center at 203-617-3939 and call them at 1-866-624-5724 to let them know that the setup is complete.
- 8. Go to Running a PresortXtra job.

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 126 of 367

5 - SendPro Shipping

In this section

Getting started	128
Address book	132
Settings	135
Shipping/Carriers	139
Transactions	153
Troubleshooting	157

Getting started

Adding postage to SendPro™ P Series

Your USPS postage balance is displayed in the upper right area of the *Choose a Recipient* screen, just below the main navigation bar. You access the *Choose a Recipient* screen by creating a new USPS label from the *Home* screen, or by selecting **USPS** from the **Print** menu.

Note:

For UPS and FedEx carriers your postage costs are billed directly to your UPS or FedEx account.

To refill the postage in SendPro Shipping:

- 1. Select **Print Shipping Label** in the Shipping tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **USPS** logo.
- 3. Select the + sign next to your postage balance. The Refill Add Postage dialog box will appear.

Note:

Whenever you refill postage, the payment method and the last 4 digits of the account number are displayed in the *Refill Add Postage* dialog box.

- 4. Select the amount of postage you want to purchase for this refill. You can refill using a preset amount or click the **Custom** button to enter your own amount. The minimum you can add is \$10.00; the maximum depends on your postage balance, which has a limit of \$500.00.
- 5. If you have enabled Cost Accounts, you must assign the postage refill to an account.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 128 of 367

6. Click the Refill Add Postage button.

Notes:

If you get a message "we couldn't process your payment" and you're using a Reserve Account or Purchase Power for payment, you may not have sufficient funds available. To resolve this error, contact customer support.

If you are using a credit card as a payment method, you will be charged 3.5% on the amount you enter for the refill.

You can tell SendPro to automatically refill postage when the balance falls below a certain threshold. Just select **Postage Refills** from the **Settings** menu.

Tracking a shipment in SendPro™ P Series

You track a shipment using its tracking number, a unique number assigned to each shipping label you create. The tracking number is used to electronically track the package as it moves through its carrier's mailstream.

Follow these steps to get tracking information in SendPro:

1. Find your shipment's tracking number. The tracking numbers for your five most recent shipments are displayed in the *Track Your Packages* section on the *Home* screen.

Note:

If you don't see your tracking number in this list or you don't know the tracking number, see "To find a tracking number" later in this topic".

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 129 of 367

2. Select your shipment's **Track** link to get detailed tracking information on the *Track a Package* screen. A typical example is shown here.

Track a Package			
Carrier USPS Tracking number 9400109898643500002363			
Date	Status	Location	
1/19/16 4:22 PM	Delivered, In/At Mailbox	LOMBARD, IL 60148	
1/19/16 8:20 AM	Out for Delivery	LOMBARD, IL 60148	
1/19/16 8:10 AM	Sorting Complete	LOMBARD, IL 60148	
1/19/16 4:19 AM	Arrived at Post Office	LOMBARD, IL 60148	
1/17/16 2:33 PM	Arrived at USPS Destination Facility	CHICAGO METRO HUB	
1/14/16 10:53 PM	Arrived at USPS Facility	WHITE PLAINS, NY 10610	
1/14/16 10:58 AM	Picked Up	BRIDGEPORT, CT 06610	
1/13/16 12:00 AM	Pre-Shipment Info Sent to USPS		

To find a tracking number in SendPro™

How to find a tracking number:

- 1. View all tracking numbers:
 - a. In the Track Your Packages section on the Home screen, click **View all**. Select the **History** button on the Home screen.
 - b. Locate the tracking number in the list of shipments.

Note:

Each line in the list represents a single shipment and includes the Status field. This tells you if the shipment's label has been printed, or if it's in transit or has been delivered.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 130 of 367

- c. To view the tracking event details for that shipment, click on the > arrow in the left of the column list, next to the shipment's date, to reveal the shipment's details.
- 2. Search for a tracking number:
 - a. Look for the search box on the Shipments tab.
 - b. Enter the tracking number in the field.
 - c. The system automatically narrows down the list of shipments based on the information you provide.
 - d. Look for the search box on the *Home* screen just below the five most recent shipment in the *Track Your Packages* section on the *Home* screen.
 - e. Select the shipment's carrier and enter the tracking number in the field. Then click **Track**.

Click on the Copy tracking number button next to any tracking number to copy it to your clipboard.



As soon as you print a shipping label and return to the *Home* screen, the tracking number for the label appears at the top of the *Track Your Packages* list.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 131 of 367

Address book

Adding an address to the Address Book

- 1. Go to the **Address Book** from the main navigation menuhome screen.
- 2. Select either the **Recipient** or **Sender** tab (whichever is appropriate).
- Click on +Add New button.
- 4. At the Add Contact screen, click the **Add one address** button.
 - To import multiple addresses, click on the Import multiple addresses button. Refer to How to import and export addresses.
- 5. Enter the details for the new address in the fields provided on the screen.
- 6. Click **Save** when done. You may be prompted to verify the address.
- 7. The new address is added to your list of addresses.

Changing the sender's address

You can make changes to the current sender's address, add a new sender address, or select a different sender address from the Address Book as you create a shipping label. You can also make these changes when adding an address to the Address Book.

To change the sender's address while creating a shipping label:

- 1. Click on the sender address in the Sender section on the left side at the top of the *Choose a Recipient* screen.
- 2. Select the appropriate option.
 - Edit sender address Select this to display all the address fields. Type your changes in the appropriate field(s). If you make changes to street, city, state or ZIP code (USPS) click on the Confirm Address button when done.
 - Add new sender address Select this to add a new sender address. Type in the sender's
 address in the fields provided. For USPS, click on the Confirm Address button when done.
 - **View all senders** Select to display all the available sender addresses in the address book. Click on the one you want to use. This then appears in the Sender section.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 132 of 367

Creating a USPS label from an address

You can start creating a USPS, UPS or FedEx shipping label within the Address Book. To do this:

- 1. Go to the **Address Book** from the main navigation menuHome screen.
- 2. Select an address from either the **Recipients** list or the **Senders** list.
- 3. Select the **Print Shipping Label** button and start creating the shipping label.

Editing or deleting an address

- 1. Go to the **Address Book** from the main navigation menuhome screen.
- 2. Click on **Recipients** to display the list of all recipient addresses. Click on **Senders** to display the list of all sender addresses.
- 3. Select the address from the list.
- 4. You can edit or delete the selected address. The **Edit** and **Delete** button are on the right side of the screen.
 - If you select **Edit**:
 - a. The address fields are displayed in the *Edit Contact* screen. Make any changes necessary.
 - b. Click the **Save** button at the bottom of the screen.
 - c. The updated displays in the list of addresses.
 - If you select **Delete**:
 - a. You are asked to confirm that you want to delete the address.
 - b. To delete the address, click the **Delete** button.

Verifying a USPS address

Whenever you enter a US address in SendPro, you'll be prompted to verify it by clicking a **Confirm Address**when you click the down arrow button. You'll encounter address verification when entering

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 133 of 367

recipient or sender address information, creating a shipping label, or adding an address to the Address Book.

- The USPS keeps a database of valid mailing addresses. By clicking **Confirm Address** you can confirm that the USPS recognizes and can deliver to that address.
- If USPS doesn't recognize a recipient's address then you'll need to edit it until it can be validated. Then you can print your label.

If SendPro finds a close match in the USPS database, you'll have the option of using that instead of the address you entered, editing your entry, or using the address you entered as is. To accept the USPS-verified address, click the **Use Verified** button when prompted. SendPro will save any edits you made to the address you entered.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 134 of 367

Settings

Canceling a UPS or FedEx shipping label

You can cancel the UPS and FedEx shipping label so that the postage will not be applied to your invoice from UPS/FedEx.

You can cancel a label immediately after printing it or from the shipping label *History* screen.

To cancel after printing:

- 1. On the Carrier screen you will see a confirmation that the label has been printed.
- 2. Once you print the shipping label, return to the *Home* screen by selecting the **SendPro** application tab at the top of the screen.
- 3. For UPS, click on the Void Label link at the top of the Carrier screen.
- 4. For UPS, click on the **Void Label** link at the top of the *Home* screen.
- 5. The *Void Shipping Label* dialog box displays. Read the information and certify that you will not be using the shipping label by selecting the check box provided.
- 6. Click Yes to cancel the label.

To cancel the label from the *History* screen:

- 1. Select the **History** button on the *Home* screen.
- 2. From the **History** menu, choose **Request a Refund**.
- 3. This opens the *History* screen with the tab for *Shipments* selected.
- 4. Locate the UPS or FedEx label in the list of shipments or using the search box (refer to *How to search for a shipment in SendPro*).
- Click the > arrow in the left of the column list, next to the shipment's date to reveal the shipment's details. You can also open the shipment's details by clicking on the the View link in the Status column.
- 6. Click on the **Void Label** button. Read the information and certify that you will not be using the shipping label by selecting the check box provided.
- 7. Click **Yes** to cancel the label.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 135 of 367

Getting a USPS shipping label refund

You can request a refund to 30 days from the date on which you first printed a shipping label. When you request a refund for USPS shipping labels, the postage amount is credited to your postage balance. The refund process can take up to 20 days because USPS wants see if it can detect your shipment in its mailstream before crediting your account.

You can request a refund immediately after printing a shipping label, or from the shipping label's record on the *History* screen.

You can request a refund from the shipping label's record on the *History* screen.

NOTE:

For UPS and FedEx, when you cancel a shipping label the postage won't be credited. Instead, it will simply not be applied to your invoice from UPS/FedEx. Refer to *How to cancel a UPS or FedEx shipping label*.

To request a USPS refund for a label you've just printed:

- 1. On the Carrier screen you will see a confirmation that the label has been printed.
- 2. Return to SendPro's *Home* screen. You'll see a confirmation of the label you just printed at the top of the screen.
- 3. Click on the **Request Refund** link.
- 4. You'll see a *Request Refund* dialog box with some conditions. If you agree to them, check the checkbox.
- 5. Click **Continue** to process your refund request.

To request a USPS refund from the *History* screen:

 From the History menu, choose Request a Refund. Select the History button on the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 136 of 367

- 2. This opens the *History* screen with the tab for *Shipments* selected and displaying all of the shipments that are eligible for a refund.
- 3. Find your label in the list or using the search box (refer to *How to search for a shipment in SendPro*).
- 4. Click the > arrow in the left of the column list, next to the shipment's date, to reveal the shipment's details.
- 5. Select Request Refund.
- 6. You'll see a *Request Refund* dialog box with some conditions. If you agree to them, check the checkbox.
- 7. Click the **Continue** button to process the refund request.

To check the status of your refund, refer to *How to check on a label's refund status*.

Managing your email notifications

Important

When using email notifications, make sure the recipient/sender address includes a valid email address. Refer to *How to add an address to the Address Book*.

You can have the tracking number or shipment delivery confirmation emails sent to both recipients and senders when you create shipping labels.

- 1. Select the help button (?) next to the **Email the tracking number** option on the *Recipient* screen.
- 2. Select the **Settings** link.
- 3. For each email type (tracking number or shipment delivery) check the check box in front of the option you want to enable. For example, to automatically receive an email with the tracking number when you create a shipping label, check the check box for **Send tracking emails to recipients** within the *Tracking Number Email* section.
- 4. To customize the subject line for each email type, enter the title in the *Customize the email subject line* field.
- 5. To see how an email notification will look, click the **See a preview** link.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 137 of 367

You can have the tracking number, shipment delivery, and postage refund confirmation emails sent to both recipients and senders when you create shipping labels.



- 1. Select Settings
- then Email Notifications.
- 2. For each email type (tracking number, shipment delivery, or postage refund) check the check box in front of the option you want to enable. For example, to automatically receive an email with the tracking number when you create a shipping label, check the check box for **Send tracking emails** to recipients within the *Tracking Number Email* section.
- 3. To customize the subject line for each email type, enter the title in the *Customize the email subject line* field.
- 4. To see how an email notification will look, click the **See a preview** link.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 138 of 367

Shipping/Carriers

Viewing your USPS account information in SendPro™ P Series

The method you use to pay for postage is set up when you purchase the SendPro™ P Series application. To view the payment method for your USPS account:

- 1. Select the **Print Shipping Label** button on the Shipping tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the USPS carrier.
- 3. Select the + sign next to your postage balance in the top right corner of the *Recipient* screen.
- 4. The payment method and the last 4 digits of the account number are displayed in the *Add Postage* dialog box.

SendPro™ is automatically set up to work with USPS from the moment you sign in. When you register for SendPro™ you set up your method of payment.

You can use a credit card, your Pitney Bowes Purchase Power, or Reserve Account for your payment method. The following credit cards are accepted:

- Discover, Master Card, Visa, American Express.
- 1. You manage your payment method through the *Refill Postage* dialog box. You can access this dialog box two ways:
 - Select the + sign next to your postage balance in the Choose a Recipient screen (refer to How to add postage to SendPro) when creating a USPS shipping label.

• Select **Settings** then **Shipping Carriers**. Select the + sign next to the postage balance for the USPS carrier.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 139 of 367

- 2. Your method of payment is displayed in the *Payment method* section. Click on the **Change** link. The options available depend on your payment method:
 - Reserve account you can add to your balance.
 - Purchase power you can increase your limit.
 - Credit card change you current card's expiration date, or change credit cards.

Setting up a UPS account

This procedure describes how to set up and manage a UPS carrier account.

This procedure describes how to set up a UPS carrier account.

To set up a UPS account:

- 1. Select the **Print Shipping Label** button on the *Home* screen. Select the UPS carrier. Select the UPS carrier button on the *Home* screen. This opens the *Add UPS Account* screen.
 - If you do not have a UPS account, Select the Create New UPS Account button. This
 provides you with a link to the UPS web site where you can sign up and get a UPS account
 number.
 - If you already have a UPS account, Select the **Enter My UPS Account** button.
- 2. Enter your 6-digit UPS account number.
- 3. Click the **Account Type** and select the appropriate type from the drop-down menu.
- 4. Enter your recent invoice information, or enter the name and address used to set up your UPS account:
 - Use your most recent invoice number if you have it. If you've shipped with UPS in the past 90 days, UPS will have issued you an invoice and requires that you input that information here.
 You or the account holder in your organization should be able to download it from UPS.com.
 - If you don't have a recent invoice, check the check box for I don't have a recent invoice.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 140 of 367

5. Enter your name and address **EXACTLY** as they appear on your UPS account.

IMPORTANT:

For security reasons, the information you enter when adding UPS as a carrier account for your SendPro™ system must match your UPS account's information exactly. You get 3 attempts to enter this information correctly before you are locked out of your UPS account for 24 hours. After that, you can try again. To see your UPS account information, refer to your most recent invoice or sign in to your UPS account and refer to your account's name and address information as you enter it into SendPro.

- 6. To continue, check the check mark for I accept the UPS Technology Agreement.
- 7. Select the **Add Carrier** button. You will know your UPS account has been added to SendPro™ when you see the message, "Settings have been saved successfully".

To manage your UPS account:

- 1. Select **Settings** then **Shipping Carriers**. A list of all your carriers is displayed. The account number and nickname is shown for your UPS carrier account.
- 2. Select the **Manage** link for UPS. You can change the nickname, or delete this account if you want to add a new one.
- 3. Click the Save button.

Setting up a FedEx account

This procedure describes how to set up and manage a FedEx carrier account.

This procedure describes how to set up a FedEx carrier account.

To set up a FedEx account:

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 141 of 367

- 1. Select the **Print Shipping Label** button on the *Home* screen. Select the FedEx carrier. Select the FedEx carrier button on the *Home* screen. This opens the *Add FedEx Account* screen.
 - If you do not have a FedEx account, Select the Create New FedEx Account button. This
 provides you with a link to the FedEx web site where you can sign up and get a FedEx account
 number.
 - If you already have a FedEx account, Select the **Enter My FedEx Account** button.
- 2. Enter your 9-digit FedEx account number.
- 3. Enter your name and address in the fields provided exactly as they appear on your FedEx billing statement.

Note:

When you open the *Add FedEx Account* screen, the name and address will be the one you used when signing up for SendPro. You need to replace this with your FedEx name and address.

- To use a contact name and address different from your FedEx billing address, check the check mark for My contact name or address.... A blank name and address form is then provided for you to enter this information.
- To continue, check the check mark for Accept the FedEx End-User License Agreement.
- 4. Select the **Add Carrier** button. You will know your FedEx account has been added to SendPro™ when you see the message, "Settings have been saved successfully".

To manage your FedEx account:

- 1. Select **Settings** then **Shipping Carriers**. A list of all your carriers is displayed. The account number and nickname is shown for your FedEx carrier.
- 2. Select the **Manage** link for FedEx. You can change the nickname, or delete this account if you want to add a new one.
- 3. Click the Save button.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 142 of 367

Measuring your shipment dimensions in SendPro™

When you create a shipping label you select the type of envelope or package for your shipment using the *Package TypeChoose Your Packaging* screen. Refer to *How to create a shipping label in SendPro* for more information.

- Each carrier provides a list of carrier-specific packages (flat-rate envelopes or boxes) from which you can choose. To view the dimensions and maximum allowable weight for each of these packages, position the cursor over the package.
- You can also choose to use your own envelopes or boxes in which case you are prompted to select the package type (box, envelope, or irregular packaging) and enter the dimensions and the weight. Refer to How to use your own packaging for shipments in SendPro™.

Weighing your shipment with a scale in SendPro™

When you create a shipping label you select the type of envelope or package for your shipment using the *Choose Your Packaging* screen.

Depending on the carrier and whether you are using carrier-specific packages (flat-rate envelopes or boxes) or your own packages, you may be prompted to enter the weight of your shipment. If you have an attached USB scale, place the package on your scale and click the scale buttonclick the scale button and place the package on your scale.



The weight will appear in the *Weight* field. SendPro™.

Refer to *How to create a shipping label in SendPro* for more information.

Adding a shipment memo in SendPro™

Once you enter all the information required to create your UPS or FedEx shipping label (recipient address, packaging information, carrier services - refer to *How to create a shipping label in SendPro*) you

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 143 of 367

use the *Label Options* screen to print the label. You can enter up to a 50-character note in the *Memo* field in the *Label Options* screen and this note will appear in the History file for the shipping label. Refer to *How to print a shipping label in SendPro* for more information.

Using your own packaging for shipments

For any carrier, you can choose to use your own envelopes or boxes in which case you will be prompted to select the package type (box, envelope, or irregular packaging) and enter the dimensions and the weight. If you have an attached USB scale, click the scale button and place the package on your scale.



The weight will appear in the *Weight* field.SendPro[™] will calculate and display the total postage required once you enter the mail class and any special services.

For detailed information on size and weight restrictions, contact your carrier.

For USPS: 1-800-275-8777

For UPS: 1-800-742-5877

For UPS International: 1-800-782-7892

For FedEx: 1-800-463-3339

Creating a shipping label

You can create a USPS, UPS or FedEx shipping label from the *Home* screen or from within the Address Book (refer to *How to create a USPS shipping label from an address*).

You can create a USPS, UPS or FedEx shipping label from the **Print Shipping Label** button or from within the Address Book (refer to *How to create a USPS shipping label from an address*).

This procedure walks you through the process of creating the label starting from the *Choose a Recipient* screen. It breaks the process of selecting a recipient, providing shipping details and choosing carrier-specific services into several steps. As you create the label, your progress displays along the bottom of the screen.

This procedure walks you through the process of creating the label starting from the *Recipient* screen. It breaks the process of selecting a recipient, providing shipping details and choosing carrier-specific

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 144 of 367

services into several steps. Once you provide the information in one section, select the down arrow on the right side of the screen to proceed to the next section. To go back to a previous screen, select the up arrow on the right side of the screen. As you create the label, your progress displays along the bottom of the screen.

The overall process for creating and printing a label is the same for all carriers, although you will notice some variation in packaging sizes and services offered.

- 1. Select the **Print Shipping Label** button. Select the appropriate carrier. This opens the *Recipient* screen.
- 2. Select the appropriate carrier button from the *Home* screen, or select the **Print** menu then the carrier label (for example **UPS Label**). This opens the *Choose a Recipient* screen.
- 3. If you are using Cost Accounts you need to assign a cost account for this label. Select the down arrow in the *Cost Account* section at the top of the screen and choose the account. For more information on setting up Cost Accounts, refer to *How to enable cost accounts*.
- 4. Enter the recipient's address using one of two methods:
 - Type in the recipient's address in the fields provided. SendPro™ supports "typeahead" so that if the name or part of the name is already in the address book, it will display the matching address(es).
 - Select the **Choose from Address Book** icon . You can scroll through the list of addresses or select a search option (search by full name, street etc.) by selecting the down arrow in front of the search field. If you select an international address, the *State* and *ZIP Code* fields change to *Province* and *Postal Code*.
- 5. To automatically email the tracking number to recipients or senders (or both) when you print the shipping label, check the check box in front of **Email the tracking number**. For information on the setting up the automatic email notification options, refer to *How to manage email notifications*.
 - Enter the email address in the field provided. To add more than one email, press the **Enter** key after each address. The email address is labeled as either sender or recipient.
- 6. Select the **Confirm Address** button to verify the USPS address. This ensures your address is recognized by the USPS. For more information, refer to *How to verify a USPS address*.
- Select the down arrow on the right side of the screen to continue and to verify the USPS address.
 This ensures your address is recognized by the USPS. For more information, refer to How to verify a USPS address.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 145 of 367

- 8. At the *Package Type* screen, enter the shipping package information. Select **Continue** and enter the shipping package information in the *Choose Your Packaging* screen.
 - Each carrier provides a list of carrier-specific packages (flat-rate envelopes or boxes) from which you can choose. To view the dimensions and maximum allowable weight for each of these packages, position the cursor over the package.
 - You can also choose to use your own envelopes or boxes in which case you are prompted to select the package type (box, envelope, or irregular packaging) and enter the dimensions and the weight. Refer to How to use your own packaging for shipments in SendPro™.
- 9. If you are creating an international or military shipping label, you will be prompted to enter the required customs information in the *Provide Customs DetailsCustoms* screen. You will need to identify the type of items (for example, gifts, documents, returned goods etc.) and provide detailed descriptions of all the items contained in your shipment. This includes where it's made, the cost, weight and total value. The exact requirements will depend on the carrier.
- 10. At the Services screen, select the carrier shipping service. Select Continue. Use the Choose Your Service screen to select the carrier shipping service. Depending on the package type and the carrier service, you can also select a variety of additional special services.
 - When you finish selecting the shipping services and options, the total cost for the shipping label is displayed at the bottom of the screen.
 - For the USPS carrier, if the total cost of the label exceeds your available postage funds, the RefillAdd Postage screen displays so that you can add more funds to your account. Refer to How to add postage to SendPro™
- 11. SelectSelect the **Print** button at the bottom of the screen directly under the *Total Cost*. This opens his opens the *Label Options* screen which allows you to define how you want to print the label. Refer to *How to print a shipping label*.
 - Depending on the service, you may be prompted to enter the Sender and Recipient's phone number. Enter the numbers and click **Continue** to open the *Label Options* screen.
- 12. To create a new label, repeat these steps.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 146 of 367

Creating a USPS return label

Note:

You can create a USPS return label from a shipping label you've just printed, or from the shipping label's record on the *History* screen.

To create the return label from a shipping label you've just printed:

- 1. On the Carrier screen you will see a confirmation that the label has been printed.
- 2. Return to SendPro's *Home* screen. You'll see a confirmation of the label you just printed at the top of the screen.
- Select the Create Return Label link.
- 4. Follow the same steps for creating a shipping label. Refer to *How to create a shipping label in SendPro™*.

To reprint from the *History* screen:

- 1. Select the **History** button on the *Home* screen.
- 2. From the **History** menu, choose **Shipping & Postage History**.
- 3. This opens the *History* screen with the tab for *Shipments* selected and displaying all of your recent shipments.
- 4. Find your label in the list or by using the search box (refer to *How to search for a shipment in SendPro*).
- 5. To reveal the shipment's details click the > arrow in the left of the column list, next to the shipment's date.
- 6. Select the Create Return Label button.
- 7. Follow the same steps for creating a shipping label. Refer to *How to create a shipping label in* $SendPro^{TM}$.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 147 of 367

Printing a shipping label

Once you enter all the information required to create your current shipping label (recipient address, packaging information, carrier services), you use the *Label Options* screen to define your print options. You can also define the values for these printing options for all the shipping labels you create by selecting

Settings from the *Home* screen.from the **Settings** to set up shipping label printing defaults $SendPro^{TM}$.



menu on the Home screen. Refer to How

For USPS carrier labels only:

• If you want the total cost to appear on the label, check the check box for Show cost on label

Note:

If you use an envelope and select First Class as the service, you cannot un-check the check box for **Show cost on label**. USPS requires that the cost for First Class envelopes be included on the label.

• To print a receipt along with the label, check the check box for **Print a receipt with the label**. You can only select this option if you are printing on 8 1/2" X 11" printers.

For all carriers:

- Select the down arrow in the *Choose Format* field and select the either 4 x 6 roll or 8.5 X 11 paper.
- To see the address as it will actually print on the label, use the magnifier on the label.
- To check that the label aligns correctly when you print it, select the Print Sample button. A sample label appears in a new tab. Print the sample label and check the alignment. To return to the Label Options screen, click the SendPro™ tab at the top of the screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 148 of 367

To add a note about this shipment, enter the information in the *Memo* field. You can enter up to 50 characters. This note will be available in your history file for all carriers. Refer to *How to search for a shipment in SendPro™* to view the information stored in your history file.

Print the label:

- Select the **Print** button.
- Click the **Print** button. The shipping label PDF displays it in the *Print* browser window. The specific details of the printer browser window depend on the browser you are using.
- You can select to save the PDF or print it now. If you select to save the PDF, you will be prompted for the location where you want to save it.

At the *Carrier* screen (this displays as soon as your label prints):

Return to the *Home* screen:

- Select the SendPro[™] tab at the top of the screen. You'll see a confirmation of the label you just printed at the top of the screen.
- Depending on the carrier, the top of the *HomeCarrier* screen provides you with links to the following options. Click the appropriate link.
 - Reprint this (USPS) Label Refer to How to reprint a USPS shipping label
 - Create a Return Label (USPS only) Refer to How to create a USPS return label
 - Reprint this (UPS/FedEx) Label Refer to How to reprint a UPS/FedEx shipping label
 - Save as Preset (all carriers) Refer to How to save a shipment as a Preset
 - Request a Refund (USPS only) Refer to How to get a USPS shipping label refund
 - Void Label (UPS and FedEx) Refer to How to cancel a UPS or FedEx shipping label

Setting up shipping label printing defaults

To choose the print settings you'd like to automatically apply to all new labels, from the Home screen



select Settings.

then Label Options. The Printing Defaults screen opens.

On this screen, check or uncheck the checkboxes to:

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 149 of 367

- Show or hide the shipping cost on the printed label
- Print a receipt with the shipping label

Select a default label type (Plain Paper $-8 \frac{1}{2} \times 11$ or Roll -4×6) from the **Choose Format** drop-down menu.

The *Printing Defaults* screen also allows you to enable the printing of USPS SCAN forms. Refer to *How to print a USPS SCAN form in SendPro*^{\top M} for more information.

Reprinting a UPS or FedEx shipping label

Note:

You can reprint a shipping label once, after printing it the first time, or from the shipping label's record on the *History* screen. You have up to 24 hours from the initial printing to reprint.

To reprint a shipping label you've just printed:

- 1. On the Carrier screen you will see a confirmation that the label has been printed.
- 2. Return to SendPro's *Home* screen. You'll see a confirmation of the label you just printed.
- 3. Click the **Reprint This Label** link.
- 4. Click the **Print** button.

To reprint from the *History* screen:

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 150 of 367

- 1. Select the **History** button on the *Home* screen.
- 2. From the **History** menu, choose **Shipping & Postage History**.
- 3. This opens the *History* screen with the tab for *Shipments* selected and displaying all of your recent shipments.
- 4. Find your label in the list or by using the search box (refer to *How to search for a shipment in SendPro*).
- Click the > arrow in the left of the column list, next to the shipment's date to reveal the shipment's details. You can also open the shipment's details by clicking on the the View link in the Status column.
- 6. Click the Reprint Label button.
- 7. Click the **Print** button.

Reprinting a USPS shipping label

Note:

You can reprint a shipping label once, after printing it the first time, or from the shipping label's record on the *History* screen. You have up to 24 hours from the initial printing to reprint.

To reprint a shipping label you've just printed:

- 1. On the Carrier screen you will see a confirmation that the label has been printed.
- 2. Return to SendPro's *Home* screen. You'll see a confirmation of the label you just printed.
- Click the Reprint This Label link.
- 4. You'll see a *Reprint Label* dialog box with some conditions. If you agree to them, check the check box.
- 5. Click the **Reprint** button.

To reprint from the *History* screen:

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 151 of 367

- 1. Select the **History** button on the *Home* screen.
- 2. From the **History** menu, choose **Shipping & Postage History**.
- 3. This opens the *History* screen with the tab for *Shipments* selected and displaying all of your recent shipments.
- 4. Find your label in the list or by using the search box (refer to *How to search for a shipment in SendPro*).
- 5. To reveal the shipment's details click the > arrow in the left of the column list, next to the shipment's date.
 - You'll see a Reprint Label dialog box with some conditions. If you agree to them, check the checkbox.
- 6. Click the **Reprint** button to reprint the label.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 152 of 367

Transactions

Checking on a label's refund status

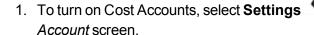
To check the status of a shipping label refund request:

- 1. From the Home screen select the **History** button.menu, choose **Request a Refund**.
- 2. This opens the *History* screen with the tab for *Shipments* selected and displaying recent shipments that are eligible for a refund.
- 3. Select the **Refunds** tab. You'll see a list of shipments for which you've already requested a refund.
- 4. Find your label in the list (or search for it refer to *How to search for a shipment in SendPro*) and check its refund status in the *Status* column. For USPS labels, its status will start as "Refund Requested". When the refund is approved, the status changes to "Refund Approved". A status of "Refund Denied" means that the USPS has detected your shipment in its mailstream and can no longer provide a refund.
- 5. The amount and date of your label's refund credit is shown in the Refund tab's rightmost columns.

Enabling cost accounts

Cost Accounts help you keep track of where you're spending your money on postage by allowing you to assign a trackable cost category to some or all of your shipping labels. You can also assign a Cost Account for postage refills.

Cost Accounts feature is enabled via the SendPro[™]Online Shipping Solution. Please contact your administrator if you need to enable this feature.





Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 153 of 367

- 2. Check on the option button for **I want to use Cost Accounts**. Click on the appropriate check box to enable the additional following cost account options:
 - Require cost account for all shipments
 - Require cost account for adding postage
- You can also use the Cost Accounts screen to add new accounts, import cost accounts, export
 existing cost accounts, or deactivate existing accounts. Refer to How to import or export Cost
 Accounts for more information.

Filing an insurance claim

If you insured your USPS, or specified a Declared Value for UPS or FedEx, you can file a claim for the shipment should it be lost or damaged.

You can file an insurance claim using the SendPro™Online Shipping Solution. Please contact your administrator.

- 1. From the **History** menu, choose **File Insurance Claim**.
- 2. This opens the *History* screen with the tab for *Shipments* selected and displaying recent shipments that are insured.
- 3. Find the insured shipping label in the list (or search for it refer to *How to search for a shipment in SendPro™*).
- 4. Click the > arrow in the left of the column list to reveal complete details for the insured shipping label.
- 5. Click the **File Insurance Claim** button. You'll be taken to the carrier's web site. Once there, fill out the required information to file a claim.

Search for a shipment in SendPro™

1. From the Home screen select the **History** button. menu, select **Shipping & Postage History** or click **View all** next to *Track Your Packages* on the *Home* screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 154 of 367

- 2. This opens the *History* screen with the tab for *Shipments* selected. All of the shipments are displayed.
 - The *Shipments* screen provides a line-item summary of all the shipments. Each line represents a single shipment and includes the date, recipient, carrier, shipping info (mail class), tracking number (USPS), status, amount (postage paid) and user (who created the label).
 - By default, all of your shipments are listed by date, the latest date appearing first in the list. The **Date** column corresponds to the date you created the label.
 - To change between ascending and descending sorting for a label in the shipping list, click on the appropriate column title. For example, to change the sorting for the carrier, click on the **Carrier** column title.
- 3. You can also limit or refine your search:
 - Click **All Shipments** button and select one of the available filters (for example, search for all insured shipments).
 - If you have the tracking number for a USPS shipments, enter it in the search field.
 - You can also search by a range of dates by selecting the **Calendar** button and choosing the appropriate option.
 - You can also search using the recipient's name, or company, or parts of the address.
- 4. Click the > arrow in the left of the column list to reveal complete details for a shipping label (recipient's and sender's address, mail class and special services, Cost Account, total cost, etc).

Where is postage being spent in SendPro™

You can see where you're spending money on postage by viewing your History file.

1. From the Home screen select the **History** button. menu, select **Shipping & Postage History** or click **View all** next to *Track Your Packages* on the *Home* screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 155 of 367

- 2. Select the tab for *Postage*. The *Postage* screen provides a line-item summary of all the times you have purchased postage for your shipping labels.
 - The purchases are listed by date, the latest date appearing first in the list. The **Date** column corresponds to the date you purchased the postage.
 - To change between ascending and descending sorting for an item in the postage purchased list, click on the appropriate column title. For example, to change sorting for Cost Accounts, click on the **Cost Account** column title.
- 3. Click the > arrow in the left of the column list to reveal complete details for a particular purchase (recipient's and sender's address, mail class and special services, Cost Account, total cost, etc).

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 156 of 367

Troubleshooting

Resolving an address verfication issue in SendPro™

For SalesForce articles, use the conditional tag: Saleforce-AEM Only.

For Help articles, use the conditional tag: Content Only

Naming topics (help) articles (SF) based on "KSC Titles Best Practices".

Grammer and formatting based on "KCS Style Guide".

These guides can be accessed at:

https://na6.salesforce.com/069800000008EJq

Screen prompts or messages should be italicized. Actions and button or tabs should be in **bold**.

Example: The meter will prompt, *Print Funds Report*. Press the **Yes/Enter** button to print a report. Press **No** if you do not want a report. You will return to the *Home* screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 157 of 367

This page intentionally left blank.

6 - Ship a Package

In this section

160
161
162
165
168
169
170
171
177
190
196

What is Ship a Package

Ship a Package is an application that resides on your Connect+ Series system. You access Ship a Package by clicking on the Ship a Package application button located next to the Run Mail button on the Home screen.

Ship a Package allows you to print IMpb compliant (2D barcode) shipping labels directly from your Connect+ system, helping you to save on USPS Parcel rates and to simplify shipping from the mail room.

The 4" x 6" shipping labels are printed using either a Brother Label (QL1050) high volume printer or a Datamax O'Neill w1110 low volume label printer. For international labels, you can use an 8.5" x 11" printer; either the Pitney Bowes 1E05/1E08/1E20 models or Brother HL5450DN (1E30) Report Laser Printer. All printers are connected using a USB hub

You can use the shipping labels for Priority Mail boxes, Priority Mail envelopes, your own boxes or large envelopes.

Note:

In order to process a shipping label with Ship aPackage, you need to use the Keyboard/Trackball provided with the Ship a Package kit.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 160 of 367

Logging into Ship a Package

You login to Ship a Package by clicking on the Ship a Package application button located next to the Run Mail button on the Home screen.

Once you are in the Ship a Package application you can return to the Run Mail application by simply clicking on the Toggle button at the top of your screen.



- 1. Click on the **Toggle** icon to return to the Mail Run application.
- 2. Ship a Package account balance.
- 3. Four choices of shipping label types.

To start creating a shipping label go to

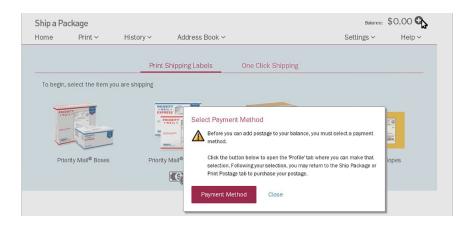
Creating and Printing a Shipping Label - Overview.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 161 of 367

Setting up a Payment Method

You select the payment method the first time you add postage to your Ship a Package account. You can choose either a Reserve Account or a Purchase Power Account. Refer to Setting up a Funds Account for information on setting up these accounts.

1. Click the (+) icon next to Balance displayed in the top right corner of the Home screen. You are prompted to select the payment method.



2. Click on the Payment Method button.

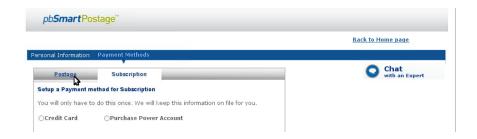


Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 162 of 367

3. For this example, click on the option button for **Purchase Power Account**. Then click on the **Save** button.



4. Click on Subscription.

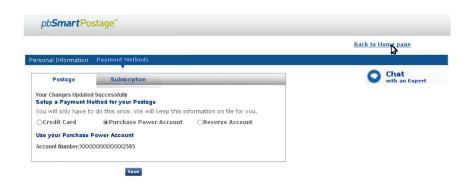


5. Click on Postage.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 163 of 367

6. Click on **Save**. You are notified that your changes have been updated successfully.

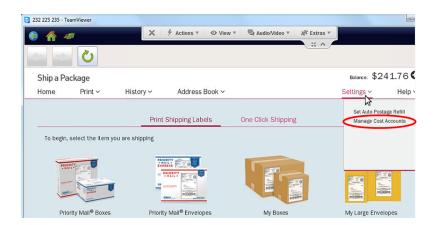


- 7. Click on Back to Home page.
- 8. This takes you back to the Ship a Package Home screen.
- 9. Click the (+) icon next to Balance displayed in the top right corner of the Home screen and add postage as described in *Adding Postage to Ship a Package Account*.

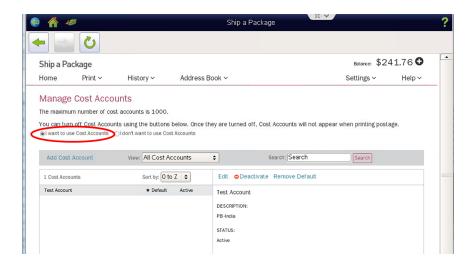
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 164 of 367

Setting up and Using Cost Accounts

1. Touch or click on **Settings** and select **Manage Cost Accounts**.



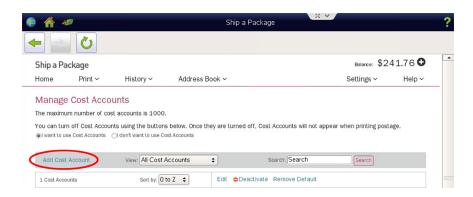
2. The Manage Cost Accounts screen opens. To enable Cost Accounts, make sure the option button for I want to use Cost Accounts is checked.



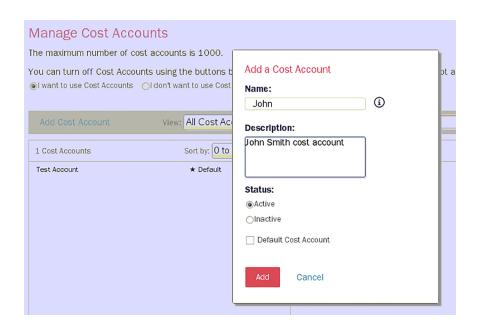
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 165 of 367

To Add a Cost Account

1. Touch or click on the Add Cost Account link.



2. Add a name and description in the Add a Cost Account dialog box that opens. Make sure the option button for **Active** is checked.

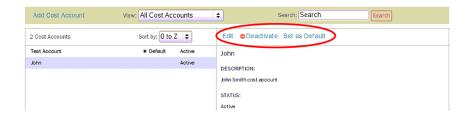


3. Click the **Add** button at the bottom of the dialog box to finish.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 166 of 367

To Edit a Cost Account

- 1. Select the account name from the left panel in the Manage Cost Accounts screen. The account details are displayed in the right panel.
- 2. Select one of the options from the details panel.



- Edit Change the description, make the account active or inactive. You can set this as the default cost account.
- **Deactivate** Displays when an active account is selected. Click **Yes** in the confirmation dialog box to deactivate the account.
- Activate Displays when an active account is selected. Click Yes in the confirmation dialog box to deactivate the account.
- Set as Default Make the selected account the Default for the Enterprise. Click Yes in the
 confirmation dialog box to complete the action. Note that when you deactivate a Default Cost
 Account, no other account becomes the default. If you want a default account, you must
 designate an account as Default Cost Account.

Using a Cost Account

When you add postage, you can assign an amount of postage to a cost account to track your postage purchase transactions. Refer to *Adding Postage*.

You can also assign a cost account when you create a shipping label. *Refer to Creating and Printing a Shipping Label - Procedure*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 167 of 367

Setting up a Funds Account

You may need to set up an account so that you can refill postage to your Ship a Package account. You can do this by setting up one of the following accounts.

- · Reserve Account
- Purchase Power Account

Setting up a Purchase Power Account

Purchase Power is a Pitney Bowes credit line that allows you to pay for equipment, postage and supplies through a single account. With Purchase Power, you can consolidate all your meter and permit postage, equipment and supplies costs on one monthly statement.

To set up a Purchase Power Account:

- 1. Go to the www.pitneybowes.com and click on the **Support** link at the top of the page.
- 2. Click on the **Postage** link, and under the "Postage Management" section, select **Paying for Postage**.
- 3. Under the "Bill-Later Option" section, click on **Purchase Power**. Follow the instructions in this section.

Setting up a Reserve Account

A Reserve Account (FDIC Insured) is a deposit account used to fund postage on your Pitney Bowes meter. Funds are held in an FDIC-insured account at The Pitney Bowes Bank, Inc., and earn interest in the form of postage credits based on the average daily balance.

To set up a Reserve Account:

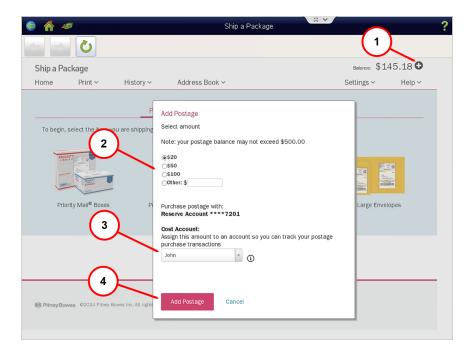
- 1. Go to the www.pitneybowes.com and click on the **Support** link at the top of the page.
- 2. Click on the **Postage** link, and under the "Postage Management" section, select **Paying for Postage**.
- 3. Under the "Pre-Paid" section, click on **Reserve Account**. Follow the instructions in this section.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 168 of 367

Adding postage to your Ship a Package account

Your Ship a Package postage account balance is displayed in the top right corner of the screen.

1. Click the (+) icon next to your balance to add postage. The Add Postage dialog box opens.



Whenever you add postage, the payment method and the last 4 digits of the account number are displayed in the Add Postage dialog box. if this is the first time you are adding postage, you will be prompted to type in the payment method. Refer to *Setting up a Payment Method* for more information.

- 2. Select the amount of postage you want to add. The minimum you can add is \$10.00; the maximum is \$500.00.
- 3. (OPTIONAL) Select a cost account.
- 4. Click the **Add Postage** button.

You can also set options for automatically adding postage when you run below a specified amount. Refer to Setting the Auto Postage Refill Amount.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 169 of 367

Setting the Auto Postage Refill Amount

If you want Ship a Package to automatically add postage to your account when the balance falls below a threshold you choose, select **Settings**, then **Set Auto Postage Refill** from the Ship A Package home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 170 of 367

Using the Address Book

You can use the Address Book screen to add, update, or delete contacts. You can also start creating a shipping label from the address book by selecting an address. This section includes:

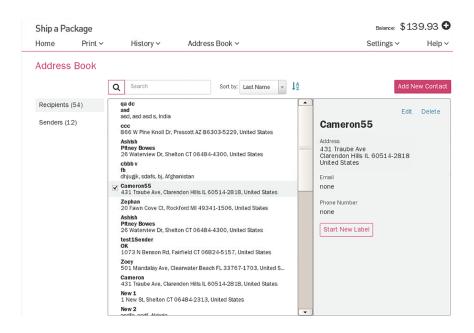
- Selecting an Address
- Adding an Address
- Editing or Deleting an Address
- Verifying an Address

Selecting an address

You can access the Address Book directly from the Ship a Package home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 171 of 367

- 1. Select **Address Book**, then **View Address Book** directly from the Ship a Package home screen.
- 2. Click on the checkbox in front of the address you want. The selected address appears in the right pane.



Note:

You can select multiple addresses by holding down the CTRL key and clicking in the checkboxes for the addresses.

 To create a shipping label using this address, click on the Start New Label button. The Print Shipping Label screen opens and the address information is added to the Recipient Address fields.

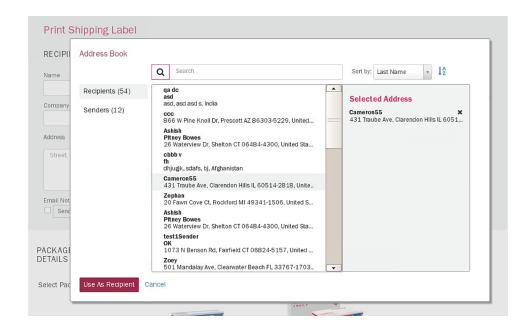
In addition, you a access the Address Book from the Print Shipping Label screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 172 of 367

1. From within the Print Shipping Label screen, select the **Address Book** icon.



2. Click to select and highlight an address from the list of addresses. The selected address appears in the right pane.



3. Select the **Use As Recipient** button. The information is added to the Recipient Address fields.

Adding an address

- 1. Select Address Book, then View Address Book directly from the Ship a Package home screen.
- 2. Select the Add New Contact button.
- 3. Type in the address information in the fields provided.
- 4. Select **Save Changes** at the bottom of the screen when done.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 173 of 367

- 5. The Ship a Package application performs address verification. It displays any differences between the USPS matching address and the address you entered and provides an option for you to either accept the USPS address or make any additional changes.
- 6. Once you accept or modify the address, it is added to the contact list.

If you have a desktop version of PB Smart Postage you can import addresses into that account and they will appear in the Ship a Package application.

Editing or Deleting an Address

- 1. Select the address from the Address Book.
- Select the Edit or Delete link.
 - If you select the **Edit** link:
 - a. The address information fields are displayed. Make any changes necessary.
 - b. Click **Save Changes** at the bottom of the screen when done.
 - c. The Ship a Package application performs address verification. It displays any differences between the USPS matching address and the address you entered and provides an option for you to make any additional changes.
 - d. Once you accept or modify the address, the updated address displays in the contact list.
 - If you select the **Delete** link:
 - a. You are asked to confirm that you want to delete the address(es).
 - b. Click on the **Delete** button to remove the contact(s).

Verifying an Address

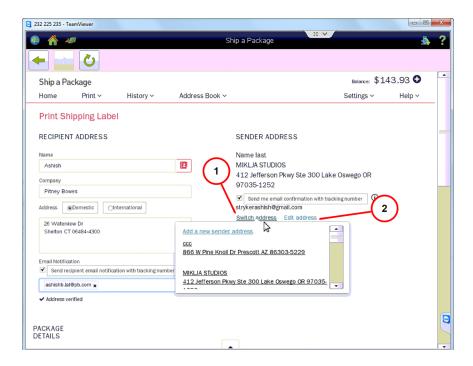
Whenever you enter an address, for example - when entering the recipient address information when creating a shipping label, or when adding an address to the Address Book - you are prompted to click Verify and Accept. You will see the address you entered, and the USPS recommended address. Select one. You have the option of saving the recipient to your Address Book.

You can also verify an address by selecting **Address Book**, then **Verify An Address** directly from the Ship a Package home screen. Simply fill in the address information fields and click on the **Verify Address** button.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 174 of 367

Temporarily change the default sender address

You can temporarily change the default SENDER ADDRESS within the Print Shipping Label screen.



- 1. To add additional sender addresses or to select a different one from a list of other stored sender addresses, select the **Switch address link**.
- 2. To edit the current default SENDER ADDRESS, select the **Edit address** link. This opens the address information fields for the current address.
- 3. Select the **Accept & Verify** button when done.

Note:

This only changes the SENDER ADDRESS for this shipping label. When you create another label, the original default SENDER ADDRESS is restored. To change your SENDER ADDRESS permanently, refer to *Permanently Changing the Default Sender Address*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 175 of 367

Permanently Change the Default Sender Address

To change the default SENDER ADDRESS in the Print Shipping Label screen:

- 1. Go to www.pitneybowes.com and sign in to my account.
- 2. Select the **Edit account info** link in the Account Management category.
- 3. Make any necessary address changes.
- 4. Allow 5 business days for the change to take effect.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 176 of 367

Creating and printing a shipping label - Overview

You can create and print shipping labels for four types of envelopes and packages. These are displayed on the Ship a Package home screen when you start the application.



They include:

- a. Priority Mail Boxes: USPS-branded flat-rate boxes.
- b. Priority Mail Envelopes: USPS-branded flat-rate envelopes.
- c. My Boxes: shipping containers you provide.
- d. My Large Envelopes: Flat mailers you provide.

The procedures for creating the four types of shipping labels are very similar. The main differences are in the Mailing and Shipping and Extra Services options available for each type. In addition, if you are creating labels for Priority Mail Boxes or Envelopes, the Package Details are already provided as part of those services.

Note:

When you are creating a shipping label within the Ship a Package application you need to use the scroll bar to proceed from one screen to the next.

Refer to:

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 177 of 367

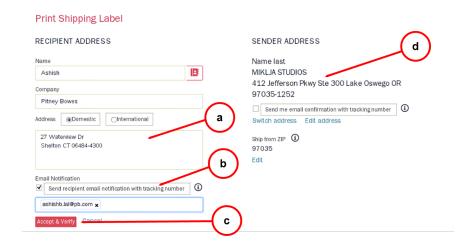
- Creating and Printing a Shipping Label Procedure
- Creating a Shipping Label Preset with One Click Shipping
- Creating an International Shipping Label

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 178 of 367

Creating and Printing a Shipping Label - Procedure

Follow the steps below to create a shipping label for box containers you provide. Remember, when you are creating a shipping label within the Ship a Package application you need to use the scroll bar to proceed from one screen to the next.

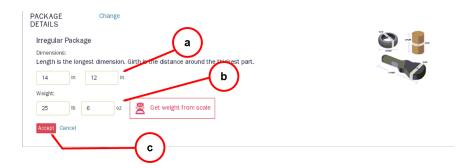
- 1. Select **My Boxes** from the Ship A Package home screen.
- 2. Type in the RECIPIENT ADDRESS information manually or by *accessing the Address Book* and selecting a contact there.



- a. If you type in the address manually, type in the entire address including street, city, state and ZIP code in the address block.
- b. To request that an email with a tracking number be sent to the recipient, select this option and include an email address.
- c. Select the **Accept & Verify** button to verify the address.
- d. You can also change the SENDER ADDRESS for this shipping label. Refer to *Temporarily Change the Default Sender Address*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 179 of 367

3. Scroll down to the PACKAGE DETAIL section and for this example, select the **Irregular Package** icon.



- a. Type in the package dimensions.
- b. If you know the weight, type it in now. If not, place the package on the scale and click on the **Get weight** icon. The weight displays in the Weight fields.

Note:

If the scale does not respond, select the **Toggle** icon at the top of the Ship A Package screen. This takes you back to the Run Mail application. *Zero the Scale from within Running Mail*, then select the **Toggle** icon again to return to Ship A Package. The weight should now display here.

- c. Click on the Accept button to approve the weight.
- 4. Scroll down to the USPS MAILING & SHIPPING SERVICES section.

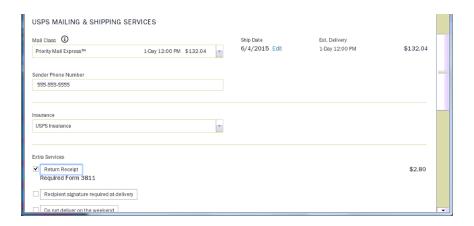


Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 180 of 367

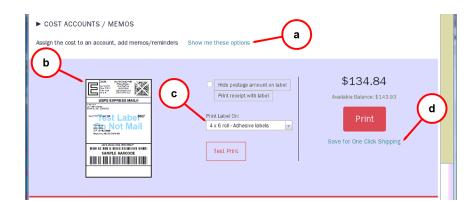
Select the drop-down field under Mail Class and select the class (Priority Mail Express in this example). Only those classes available with the package specifications you have entered are displayed.



6. Scroll down and enter Insurance and Extra Services as needed.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 181 of 367



7. Scroll down to display COST ACCOUNTS/MEMOS and Print section.

- a. To assign the cost of this label to a cost account, click on the **Show me these options** link. For more information on cost accounts, refer to *Setting up and Using Cost Accounts*. This also allows you to enter Memos which are notes for future reference. You can view Memos in *Transaction History*. You may enter any text up to 50 characters.
- b. A sample label is displayed.
- c. To change the type of label (for example, 4 x 6 to 8.5 X 11) select the **Print Label On** drop-down and select the label.
- d. If you want to save the settings for this label as a preset, select the Save for One Click Shipping. For more information, refer to Creating a Shipping Label Preset - One Click Shipping.
- 8. Click on the **Print** button when ready to print. Remove the label from the printer and apply it to your package.

Creating a shipping label preset with One Click Shipping

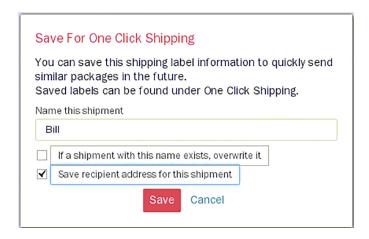
One Click Shipping allows you to save the settings for a shipping label so you can send similar packages in the future. You can also save an open shipping label to One Click Shipping.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 182 of 367

Note:

One Click Shipping is not available for International shipping.

- 1. Select One Click Shipping from the Ship a Package home screen.
- 2. Select the Create icon.
- 3. The Create For One Click Shipping screen opens.
- 4. Follow the same steps as you do for *Creating and Printing a Shipping Label* until you get to the end of the shipping label setup (on the COST ACCOUNTS / MEMOS screen).
- 5. Select the **Save** button. You are prompted to name the shipment. You have the option of saving the recipient address with the shipment.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 183 of 367

Using or Editing a One Click Shipping Preset

- 1. Select **One Click Shipping** from the Ship a Package home screen.
- 2. Hover over the preset icon (to view the preset details).



3. Select the Open/Edit link.

- a. To use the preset to print a label, scroll to the bottom and select the **Print** button.
- b. To edit the preset, make changes you want, then scroll to the bottom screen and select **Save**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 184 of 367

Creating an international shipping label

If you are shipping internationally — to a country other than UNITED STATES — follow these instructions.

The procedure for creating an International shipping label is similar to that for *Creating and Printing a Shipping Label*. The main differences include adding the recipient address information and entering information required for customs purposes. Only those differences are called out in the images in the example here.

Note:

- You need to use the scroll bar to proceed from one screen to the next in the Ship a Package application.
- For international shipping labels, you must print to the 8.5 x 11 Brother (IE20/EI30) Report Laser Printer.

To create a shipping label for box containers you provide:

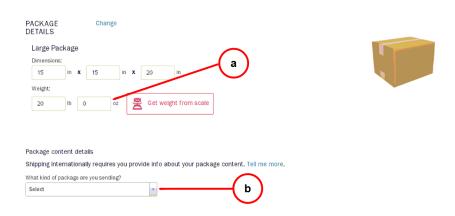
- 1. Select **My Boxes** from the Ship A Package home screen.
- 2. Type in the RECIPIENT ADDRESS information manually or by *Accessing the Address Book* and selecting a contact from there. Be sure to select the Address option for International.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 185 of 367

Scroll down to the PACKAGE DETAIL section and for this example, select the Large Package
icon. In addition to entering the dimensions and weight, you need to provide details about the
package contents.

Note:

Irregular Packages are not available for international shipping. Your options also will vary with the country selected.



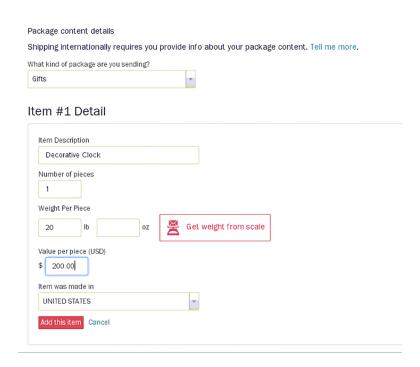
a. If you know the weight, enter it now. If not, place the package on the scale and select the **Get** weight icon. The weight displays in the Weight fields.

Note:

If the scale does not respond, click on the **Toggle** icon at the top of the Ship A Package screen. This takes you back to the Run Mail application. *Zero the Scale from within Running Mail*, then click on the **Toggle** icon again to return to Ship a Package. The weight should now display here.

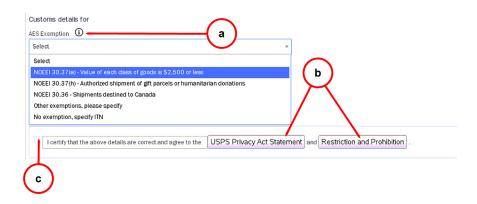
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 186 of 367

- b. Click in the drop-down for **What kind of package are you sending?** and select the appropriate option.
- 4. Type in the information for each item in the dialog provided. Click on **Add this item** when complete.



Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 187 of 367

5. Select the customs details.



- a. For AES Exemption, select:
 - 30.36 if shipping to Canada
 - o 30.37(a) or 30.37(h) if shipping to a country other than Canada
- b. Be sure to click **UPSP Privacy Act Statement** and **Restriction and Prohibition** and read the information contained in each section.
- c. If you agree with the terms, select the checkbox for I certify ... to proceed.
- 6. Select the mail class in the USPS MAILING & SHIPPING SERVICE SECTION.
- 7. Add Email Notifications, Cost Accounts, or Memos (optional) in the COST ACCOUNT / MEMOS section.
- 8. When you have completed all the required fields, click either **Test Print** or **Print**. For international shipping labels, you must print to an 8.5" x 11" printer; either the Pitney Bowes 1E05/1E08/1E20 models or Brother HL5450DN (1E30) Printer.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 188 of 367

- 9. Regardless of the mail class used (First Class International, or Priority Mail International), a single sheet of paper is printed. The top half of the sheet contains the international shipping label.
 - a. Cut the top half of the sheet and tape it to the parcel.
 - b. Save the bottom half for your records.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 189 of 367

Transactions

You can view the transaction history, track a package and view transaction reports from the **History** selection on the Ship A Package home screen.

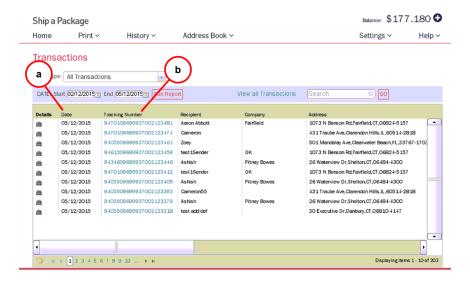
Refer to:

- View the Transaction History
- Track a Package
- View Transaction Reports

View the Transaction History

To view your transaction history, select **History** then **View Transactions** from the Ship a Package home screen.

The Transactions history screen provides a line-item summary of all the transactions. Each line represents a single transaction.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 190 of 367

- a. The **Date** column corresponds to the transaction date and is the date printed on the shipping label.
- b. The **Tracking Number** is a unique number assigned to each shipping label transaction. It is used to electronically track the package as it moves through the mailstream. For USPS® packages, it is the e-confirmation number associated with the confirmation service selected. Refer to *Track a Package* for more information.

Use the scroll bar at the bottom of the screen to scroll to the right to view additional items (Cost, Carrier, Mail Class, Package Weight, Insurance Cost, Cost Account, and Memos). You can also sort by column by clicking on the column.

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 191 of 367

Filter the Transaction History screen results

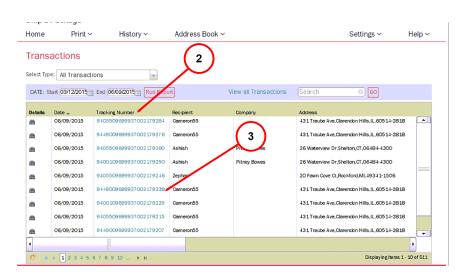


You can filter the transactions displayed according to:

- a. Type click in the **Select Type** field and choose from the drop-down list (All Transactions, All Packages, Insured Packages, Postage Purchased, Postage Balance Adjustment). For a summary of the reports generated by type, refer to *View Transaction Reports*.
- b. Date range set the beginning and end dates by clicking on the calendar icons and selecting the dates.
- c. Search by recipient, class, carrier, tracking number, origin ZIP, destination ZIP, country, or account This function appears for all reports except Postage Purchased and allows you to display a filtered report based on your search. To perform a search, type your search text in the entry box, select the desired search criteria from the drop-down list, then click the **Go** button to view your results.

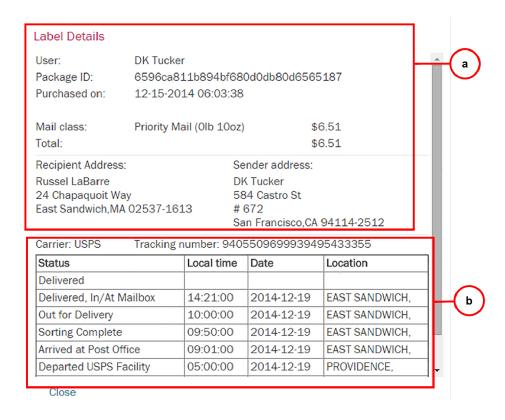
Track a Package

1. Select **History** then **View Transactions** from the Ship A Package home screen.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 192 of 367

- 2. Locate the transaction you want to track from the list of transactions. To sort by Tracking Number, click on the column header for **Tracking Number**.
- 3. Click on the Tracking Number link for the transaction.
- 4. A pop-up box appears.



- a. If the USPS does not have delivery status details, the pop-up box will only contain the Label Details (top portion).
- b. If the USPS has delivery status details, the pop-up box will show the details.

View Transaction Reports

The following is a summary of the transaction reports available for viewing within the Ship a Package application.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 193 of 367

All Transactions

- This report displays all the transactions printed in the timeframe you defined for the Reports page.
- By default, this report contains the columns for Transaction Details, Tracking Number, Recipient, and Class.
- At the bottom-center of this report is a Show/Hide Columns link that opens a pop-up window that
 allows you to create a fully customizable report by selecting any number of the columns to be
 displayed in the report. After you've made your selections and clicked OK, the pop-up is closed and
 the newly defined report is displayed.

All Packages

- The summary displays the transaction date and time, tracking number, mail class, account, and recipient country (shipping labels only).
- The Details pop-up window for any line item in the summary displays the user name, package ID, purchase date and time, mail class and related special services, itemized charges, total charges, origin address, recipient Address (shipping labels only), carrier, and carrier tracking number.
- Clicking the tracking number of any line item of the summary displays the Details pop-up window, which includes the tracking number.

Insured Packages

- This report displays all completed transactions that have had the Insured additional service purchased. It also shows the declared value of the transaction and the insurance provider.
- The summary displays the transaction date and time, tracking number, and recipient (shipping labels only).

Postage Purchased

- This report displays your postage purchased only for the selected time period.
- The summary displays the transaction date and time, amount, and account (from the Charge To field, if used).

Postage Balance Adjustment

- This report displays all the transactions submitted for approved postage label refunds.
- The "Original Transaction" date for shipping labels is the date the label was originally printed. For all other entries in the table, the Original Transaction date will be the same as the Credit Applied date.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 194 of 367

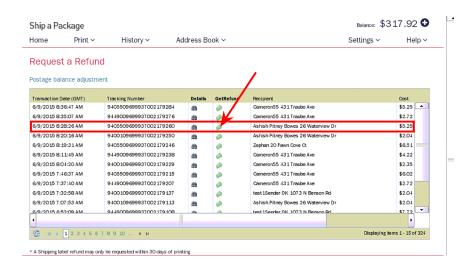
- Shipping label has status of "In-Process," (the refund for the postage label is pending) "Approved," (refund is made and the funds are returned to the Postage Balance), or "Denied." All other entries have status of "Approved".
- Credit/Debit Applied If a postage dispute decreases your account, then the "refund" is shown as a negative value.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 195 of 367

Request a refund

You can request a shipping label postage refund within 30 days of printing.

- 1. Select **History** then **Request a Refund** from the Ship a Package home screen.
- 2. Locate the transaction for which you want a refund from the list of transactions displayed.
- 3. In the **Get Refund** column, click the icon for the desired transaction.

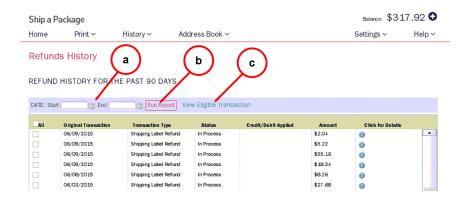


- 4. In the Refund Request pop-up window, select **Submit**. The dialog advises you that the refund request has been submitted.
- 5. Select **OK** to close the pop-up window and return to the eligible transactions displayed in the Request a Refund screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 196 of 367

View the Refund History

- 1. Select **History** then **Request a Refund** from the Ship A Package home screen.
- 2. Select **Postage balance adjustment** link on the Request a Refund screen to view the refund history for the past 90 days.



- 3. To view refunds for a specific range of dates, set the beginning and end dates by clicking on the calendar icons and selecting the dates.
- 4. Select Run Report.
- 5. To view only those transactions that are eligible for refunds, select the **View Eligible Transaction** link.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 197 of 367

7 - Receive a Package

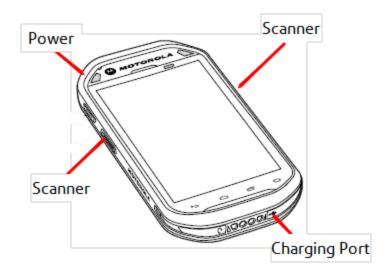
In this section

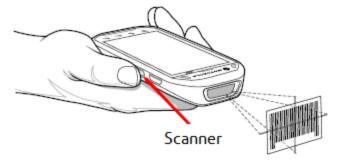
Getting started	199
Receive	204
Edit	206
Packages	207
Settings	208
Troubleshooting	210

Getting started

Setting up a mobile device scanner

Buttons and charging port





Note:

The scanner can be configured to use the left or right trigger buttons.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 199 of 367

Connecting to Wi-Fi

- 1. From the home screen, tap the **Tracking Online** app.
- 2. If you haven't already connected to your Wi-Fi, you will be prompted to set it up. If you're already connected, continue with the next step.
- 3. Turn Wi-Fi on.
- 4. Connect to your Wi-Fi from the list.
- 5. If your network requires both a username and password, enter your username in the identity field.
- 6. Tap the **Home** button. Show me ...



0

- 7. Open the **Tracking Online** app.
- 8. Sign in using your email address and your Tracking Online password.

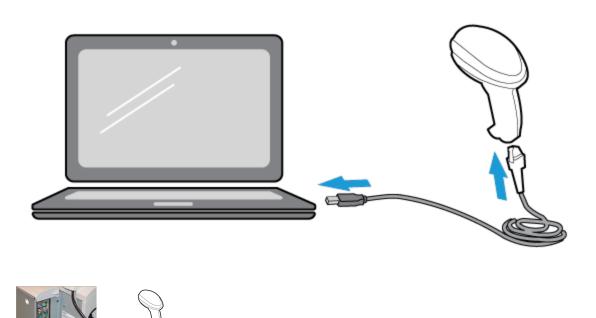
Your scanner is ready to use. Follow these instructions to test it.

Tell me more about scanning barcodes...

Barcode scanners read the barcodes printed on shipping labels. A simple 1D barcode can tell you the tracking number and carrier name. A 2D barcode contains more information, and can often provide the sender and recipient names.



Setting up a cable-connected scanner



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 201 of 367

Connect the scanner to an open USB port. You will hear a beep when the scanner is recognized.

Your scanner is ready to use. Follow these instructions to test it.

Note for Mac users:

Your Mac will see the scanner as a keyboard, and display a keyboard setup window. Dismiss this window and continue to *testing your scanner*.

Tell me more about scanning barcodes...

Barcode scanners read the barcodes printed on shipping labels. A simple 1D barcode can tell you the tracking number and carrier name. A 2D barcode contains more information, and can often provide the sender and recipient names.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 202 of 367

Test your scanner

With the application open, scan this barcode



• If the Tracking number, Carrier, Recipient, and Sender fields display package information, you are ready to begin working with SendSuite Tracking Online.

Notifications

Receive a Package will inform the recipient that a package has arrived if an email address is provided. You can turn this feature on or off in the Notifications window.

- 1. Click Notifications.
- 2. Click the **ON/OFF** toggle switch.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 203 of 367

Receive

Receive

- 1. On the Home screen, click Receive.
- 2. Scan the carrier's barcode or type the Tracking Number. The system extracts all the information possible from the barcode. More about barcodes ...
 - A 2D barcode contains the Tracking Number, Carrier name, Sender, and Recipient.



Tracking number (required)
1Z098765432098876
Carrier
UPS
Sender
Bill Evans
Recipient
Joe Jones

- 3. If the **Carrier** field is not automatically filled in after scanning the barcode, click in the field and select the carrier from the Suggested Carriers list.
- 4. If the **Recipient** and **Sender** fields are not automatically filled in after scanning the barcode, click in each field and select names from the list.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 204 of 367

- 5. OPTIONAL: If the Recipient's name is not listed, type the name into the Recipient field. As you start typing, you'll see a prompt to add the employee's information. More...
 - a. Click in the suggestion drop list menu to Add [name].... The Add Contact window will be displayed. The Recipient check box will be pre-selected, and you have the option to also make this person a Sender.
 - b. OPTIONAL: Enter an **Email** address to notify the Recipient that the package has arrived. .
 - c. Click **Save**. The recipient is now in your Contacts.
- 6. OPTIONAL: If the Sender's name is not listed, type the name into the **Sender** field. As you start typing, you'll see a prompt to add the employee's information. More...
 - a. Click in the suggestion drop list menu to Add [name].... The Add Contact window will be displayed. The Sender check box will be pre-selected, and you have the option to also make this person a Recipient.
 - b. Click **Save**. The sender is now in your Contacts.

NOTE:

The record will not be saved unless you add the new recipient or sender to the contact database.

- 6. OPTIONAL: If the package is damaged, select the **Arrived damaged** check box.
- 7. OPTIONAL: Click **Comments** to enter additional information. If you selected "Other" in the carrier field, enter the carrier's name here.
- 8. Select Received from the Status menu.
- 9. Click **Save** to save the item.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 205 of 367

Edit

Edit a package record

Use this screen to add or correct missing information in a package record.

- 1. In the Home screen, Select Edit. Select Edit in the Receiving tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Scan the barcode or type the ID number for the package.
- 3. Press the [Enter] key if you typed the ID number.
- 4. To change information in any field, click in the field and make your edits.
- 5. Enter any information to be associated with the package in the Comments field, if necessary.
- 6. Click Save.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 206 of 367

Packages

The Packages screen

Use this screen to review information about the packages in your system.

1. In any screen, click Packages. The complete list of your packages will be displayed.

Tip:

Use the search bar to search by Status Date, Carrier, Tracking Number, or Status.



- 2. Click the > icon to expand a package record. Show me more...
 - The expanded record shows you additional details, such as the Sender, comments, whether the package arrived damaged, and the recipient's signature.
- 3. Click **View More** to see the complete package history, with timestamps for every change in the record.
- 4. Click **Edit** to change anything in the package record.
- 5. Click **Delete** to delete the package record. A confirmation dialog box will open.
 - a. Click Delete Package to delete the record, or
 - b. Click the **x** to close the dialog box.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 207 of 367

Settings

User roles

This page explains what you can see and do in your User Role.

Read-only

- View saved content in the PC application, but not on the mobile scanner.
- View package details without editing them.
- · Search for packages.
- See the menu items Home, Packages, and Help.
- When you log in, SendSuite® Tracking Online opens in the Packages screen.

User

- · Receive, Edit, and Deliver packages.
- · Search for packages.
- See the menu items Home, Packages, and Help.
- Use the mobile scanner to receive and deliver packages.

Administrator

- · Edit and assign user roles.
- View the SendSuite® Tracking Onlineplan subscription.

Desktop widgets

The widgets allow you to quickly look up how many packages have been processed today.

What would you like to know?

How many packages have been received today?

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 208 of 367

1. Click the **Received today** button.

39 Received today

- 2. The Packages page will open, showing you all packages that have been received today.
- 3. For information about how to edit package information in this screen, refer to Packages.

How many packages have been delivered today?

1. Click the **Delivered today** button.

13 Delivered today

- 2. The Packages page will open, showing you all packages that have been delivered today.
- 3. For information about how to edit package information in this screen, refer to the *Packages* screen.

How many packages have not been delivered yet?

1. Click the **Undelivered** button.

324 Undelivered

- 2. The Packages page will open, showing you all packages that have been received but not delivered.
- 3. For information about how to edit package information in this screen, refer to the Packages.

Note:

Undelivered packages includes packages with Received, Attempted, and Refused status.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 209 of 367

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting your mobile device Wi-Fi connection

Having a problem connecting to your Wi-Fi network? Follow these troubleshooting steps.

Note:

You may need to involve your company's IT/networking team to resolve Wi-Fi network issues.

You will need a valid user ID and password for the Wi-Fi network in your location.

1. On Home screen swipe down from the notification bar. Show me...



2. Select settings. Show me...



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 210 of 367

3. Tap Wi-Fi. Show me...



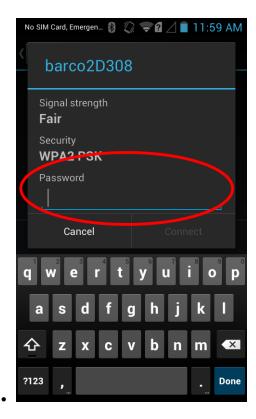
4. Is your network connected?



- Yes Wi-Fi should be fine. Continue to Step 6 and try connecting to the internet.
- No Tap and hold your network's name until a menu comes up. Continue to the next step.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 211 of 367

5. Enter the network password. Show me...

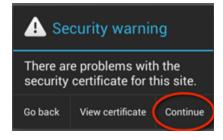


Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 212 of 367

- 6. Check the internet connection.
 - a. Tap the **Browser** app. Show me...



b. If this security message appears, tap Continue.

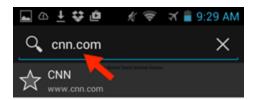


c. Tap the URL in the location bar.



Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 213 of 367

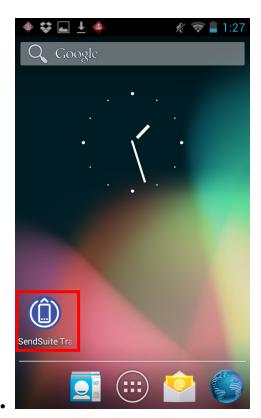
d. Replace URL with a site that you expect will be running, such as cnn.com. Using CNN lets you know if the site is real-time since it has current news.



7. Tap Home.



8. Tap SendSuite Mobile. Show me...



If you need help with an advanced Wi-Fi setup, follow these instructions.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 214 of 367

Need more help?

Call 800-888-0286 Mon-Fri 8 am-8 pm Eastern

Call 0800 748 639 Mon-Fri 8 am-6 pm, AEST

Call 1-800-888-0286 Mon-Fri 8 am-8 pm Eastern

Call 13 23 63 Mon-Fri 8:30am – 5pm NZ

Call 08444 992 992 Mon-Fri 9am-5pm GMT

Advanced Wi-Fi setup

If you can't connect, or the connect option is not there, you may need to change your password. This is also true if you recently changed your password on the PC and you haven't done it yet on the mobile device scanner.

Note:

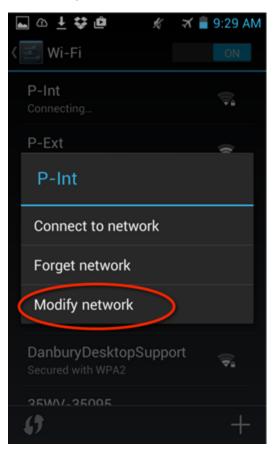
You may need to involve your company's IT/networking team to resolve Wi-Fi network issues.

You will need a valid user ID and password for the Wi-Fi network in your location.

- Navigate to Settings > Wi-Fi > Network.
- 2. Choose Connect to network.
- 3. If you don't see **Connect to network**, follow these steps:

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 215 of 367

4. Tap Modify network.



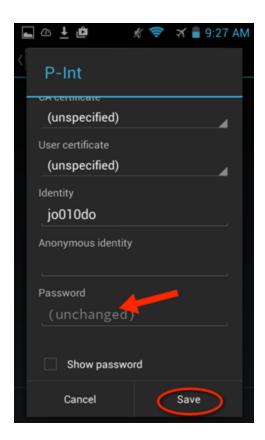
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 216 of 367

5. Scroll down until you see **Identity**. That should be your Wi-Fi user name.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 217 of 367

6. Just a little further down is the **Password** field. Tap the field and enter your password. **TIP:** Select the Show password check box to very that you are typing the correct password.



7. Tap **Save**.

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 218 of 367

8. Tap the **Home** button. Show me...



9. Check the notification bar for the Wi-Fi icon.



10. Check the internet connection.

Need more help?

Call 800-888-0286 Mon-Fri 8 am-8 pm Eastern

Call 0800 748 639 Mon-Fri 8 am-6 pm, AEST

Call 1-800-888-0286 Mon-Fri 8 am-8 pm Eastern

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 219 of 367

Receive a Package

Call 13 23 63 Mon-Fri 8:30am – 5pm NZ

Call 08444 992 992 Mon-Fri 9am-5pm GMT

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 220 of 367

8 - Accounting

In this section

All about accounting	222
Creating, editing or deleting an account	227
Accounting options when running mail	235
All about transactions	240
All about surcharges	248
All about Job IDs	252
All about accounting reports	254

All about accounting

The Connect+ Series is designed with an integrated accounting capability that specializes in single meter sites. You can use the accounting feature to track and account for postage used by departments or individuals within your organization.

The accounting feature helps you to understand how your postage is spent and to find cost-saving opportunities. You can charge postage back to departments or clients, apply surcharges to recover mailing costs and report postage spend data over flexible time periods.

In addition, the accounting feature allows you to review the characteristics of your mailings to see if they qualify for postal discounts.

The standard accounting package allows you to create up to 100 accounts and is available on all mailing and shipping systems. You can purchase additional accounts, allowing you to create up to 300, 500, 1000, 2000 or 3000 accounts.

If your mailing and shipping system uses Business Manager accounting, all account and transaction management functions take place at the Business Manager Host PC. Refer to the help file provided with the Business Manager application for more information.

Using a multi-level account structure

The accounting structure is based on three levels: account, sub account and sub sub account. Your account names can contain up to 75 characters for each level plus separators (227 characters total).

Your accounting structure can vary depending on your requirements. You can structure your accounts in single or multiple levels. For example, you can divide a top level department (account) into two additional sub sections.

Account - When you create a top level account, you can charge funds and pieces to that account.
 This is the account charged for postage because it does not have any subordinate (sub or sub sub) accounts.

Example:

Account - Engineering

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 222 of 367

• **Sub account** - If you create sub accounts for a top level account, they become the lowest level in the account hierarchy and identify the departments that are charged for postage.

Example:

Account - Engineering, Sub account - Software

Account - Engineering, Sub account - Industrial Design

Sub sub account - If you create sub sub accounts for sub accounts, the sub sub accounts
become the lowest level in the account hierarchy and identify the departments that are charged for
postage.

Example:

Account - Engineering, Sub account - Software, Sub sub account - Software Testing

Account - Engineering, Sub account - Software, Sub sub account - Software Design

Account - Engineering, Sub account - Industrial Design, Sub sub account - Graphics and Layout

Account - Engineering, Sub account - Industrial Design, Sub sub account - **User Friendly Testing**

When multiple account levels are created, the accounts are linked (account-sub account, or account-sub account, sub account). They become a set and are treated as one separate account, with one account number and one password. The top level account number and password are rolled down to the first sub account that is created. When you add second sub account to this top level account, you create a new linked set of accounts with a different account number and password.

Note:

Only the lowest level of the account hierarchy is chargeable. This means that transactions can only be posted to that account.

Account attributes

When you create accounts, you assign the following attributes to each top level account, sub account, and sub sub account:

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 223 of 367

- Account name: This can be any name you assign to an account, sub account or sub sub account.
 You must assign a name to each account, sub account and sub sub account you create. For
 information on the types of characters that can be used in account names, refer to Acceptable
 Special Characters for Account Names.
- **Code:** This is a unique code that you can assign to identify the account, sub account or sub sub account. It allows you to find a particular account with ease. You must assign a code to each account, sub account and sub sub account you create.
- **Description:** If necessary, you can enter a description for each account, sub account, and sub sub account. The account description can contain up to 150 characters.
- Status: Once you have added an account to the system, you can set the account active or inactive. Active status is the default setting for all accounts. If you have an account that you no longer wish to use use, you can set the status to inactive. The inactive account will remain on the system, but you will not be able to process transactions against it.
- Account password: You can create a password to restrict access to accounts, sub accounts and sub sub accounts. If an account is password-protected, you must type the password to edit or process mail against the account. Passwords are case sensitive, can be alphanumeric and must be four characters in length.

Account passwords must be turned on before they can be added to accounts.

Acceptable Special Characters for Account Names

The tables below show which special characters are allowed in account names within the various accounting systems.

System ~ `	!	@	#	\$	%
Budget Manager	х	x	Х	х	x
Business Manager		х	Х	х	
PC Transfer Utility	х		Х	х	х
Connect+ / Send Pro	х	х	х	х	х

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 224 of 367

System	٨	&	*	()	_	-
Budget Manager			х	Х	х	х	
Business Manager			х	Х	х	х	
PC Transfer Utility			х	Х	х	х	
Connect+ / Send Pro			х	Х	Х	х	
System	+	=	\		{	}	[
Budget Manager	х						
Business Manager	х						
PC Transfer Utility	х						
Connect+ / Send Pro	Х						
System]	11	1	:	,	?	1
Budget Manager			х	х		х	х
Business Manager				х			х
PC Transfer Utility			х	Х		х	х
Connect+ / Send Pro				х		х	Х
System	,		<	>	0 - 9	a-z	A - Z
Budget Manager	х				х	х	х
Business Manager					х	х	х
PC Transfer Utility	x	X			Х	Х	х

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 225 of 367

Uploading postal and transactional information for Business Manager

If your Connect+ Series system uses Business Manager accounting, you will need to upload your postal and transactional information to Pitney Bowes. You can do this by selecting the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.

Important:

Upload this information prior to synchronization to ensure that Business Manager can obtain the most current data from your mailing and shipping system. If you upload postal and transactional data periodically throughout the day it will reduce the overall upload time.

Refer to your *Business Manager User Guide* for more information about synchronization.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 226 of 367

Creating, editing or deleting an account

You build your accounting structure by creating an account, creating a sub account and creating a sub sub account on the mailing system.

Once you have created your account structure, you may want to change *account attributes* such as the account name, code, description, status or password by editing the account on the mailing system.

If you want to remove an account and its data, you can delete the account on the mailing system.

You can create, edit or delete an account in two ways:

- by selecting the Manage Accounts button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen, or
- by selecting Account on the Run Mail screen and then selecting Options

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, supervisor access rights are required to create, edit or delete an account.

Creating an account

Follow the steps below to create an account.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 227 of 367

- 1. You can create an account in two ways:
 - by selecting the Manage Accounts button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen, or
 - by selecting Account on the Run Mail screen, selecting Options and then Create new account
- 2. Select Create new account.
- 3. If there are existing accounts on the system, you will be prompted to create a new account or add a sub account. Select **Create new account**.
- 4. Select the **Account name** field. Type in the account name and then select **OK**.
- 5. Select the **Code** field. Type in the code for the account and select **OK**.
- 6. If necessary, select the **Description** field. Type in the description for the account and then select **OK**.
- 7. Ensure the *status* is set to **Active**.
- 8. If you want to *password* protect this account, select the Password field.

Account passwords must be *turned on* to password protect an account.

- a. Type in the password and select **OK**.
- b. Re-type the password to confirm and select **OK**.
- 9. Select OK.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 228 of 367

- 10. A dialog box appears indicating the account as been created.
 - Select Create another new account if you want to create another account.
 - Select Add a sub account to this account if you want to create a sub account for this
 account.

Sub accounts are an optional feature.

Select **Done** twice to return to the Home screen.

Creating a Sub Account or Sub Sub Account

Follow the steps below to create a sub or sub sub account. Sub accounts and sub sub accounts are an optional feature.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

- 1. You can create an account in two ways:
 - by selecting the Manage Accounts button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen, or
 - by selecting Account on the Run Mail screen, selecting Options and then Add sub account to existing account.
- 2. Select Create new account.
 - a. When prompted, select Add sub account to existing account.
 - b. Select the appropriate account and then select **OK**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 229 of 367

- 3. Select the **Sub** or **Sub sub account name** field. Type in the name and then select **OK**.
- 4. Select the **Code** field. Type in the code for the account and select **OK**.
- 5. If necessary, select the **Description** field. Type in the description for the account and select **OK**.
- 6. Ensure the status is set to Active.
- 7. If you want to password protect this sub or sub account, select the **Password** field.

Account passwords must be *turned on* to password protect an account.

- a. Type in the password and select **OK**.
- b. Re-type the password to confirm and select **OK**.
- 8. Select OK.
- 9. A dialog box appears indicating the sub or sub sub account as been created.
 - Select Create another new account if you want to create a new top-level account.
 - Select the Add another new sub account to this account if you want to create another sub or sub sub account for this account.
 - Select Add a sub sub account to this sub account if you have created a sub account and want to add a sub sub account to it.
 - Select **Done** twice to return to the Home screen.

Changing the account status to inactive

When you change the account status to inactive, the account can not be selected when running mail.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 230 of 367

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Edit account.
- 3. Select the account you want to make inactive and then select **OK**. The Edit Account screen displays.
- 4. Select the **Inactive** button in the Status area.
- Select OK.
- 6. When you change the status of an account the status change applies to all sub accounts and/or sub sub accounts. If prompted to apply the change of status of multiple accounts, select **Yes**, **apply to all**.
- 7. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Editing an account

You can view or edit the account name, code, description, status or password for all of the accounts and account levels on your system.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 231 of 367

- 1. You can edit an account in two ways:
 - by selecting the Manage Accounts button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen, or
 - by selecting Account on the Run Mail screen, selecting Options and then Edit selected account.
- 2. Select Edit account.
- 3. Select the account you want to edit and then select **OK**.
- 4. Select the account attribute you want to edit.
 - Account, Sub account or Sub sub account name: Select this option to make changes to the name of the account you have selected.
 - Code: Select this option to change the code you have assigned to the account.
 - Description: Select this option to edit the account description.
 - Status: Select the appropriate option to change the status (active or inactive) of the account.

When you change the status of an account the status change applies to all sub accounts and/or sub sub accounts. If prompted to apply the change of status of multiple accounts, select **Yes, apply to all**.

Password: Select this option to password protect an account, or to edit the existing password.

Note:

Account passwords must be *turned on* to password protect an account.

Type in the appropriate information and select **OK**.

- 5. Once you have finished editing the account information, select **OK**.
- 6. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 232 of 367

Deleting an account

When you delete an account, sub account or sub sub account, you remove its data completely. That data is then unrecoverable. Make sure you do not need the accounts data before you delete the account. Once you delete an account, the data cannot be retrieved.

If you have already charged transactions to an existing account you cannot delete the account. If you want to prevent users from charging transactions against this account, you can set the account status to inactive. Refer to *Changing the Account Status to Inactive* for more information.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

- 1. You can delete an account in two ways:
 - by selecting the Manage Accounts button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen, or
 - by selecting Account on the Run Mail screen, selecting Options and then Delete selected account.
- 2. Select Delete account.
- 3. Select the account, sub account or sub sub account you want to delete, and select **OK**.
- 4. A dialog box appears indicating the account(s) will be deleted.
 - If there are lower level sub accounts or sub sub accounts related to your selection, Select Yes,
 delete accounts to delete all account levels.
 - If this is a single level account, or the lowest account level, select Yes, delete account.
- 5. A dialog box appears indicating the account has been deleted. Select **OK**.
- 6. Select **Cancel** to return to the main Manage Accounts screen.
- 7. Select **Done** to return to the home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 233 of 367

Turning account passwords on and off

You can protect each account from unauthorized access by turning account passwords on. If account passwords are on, you will be able to add them when creating accounts.

Use of account passwords requires that you first create a user with supervisor access rights. This allows the supervisor to maintain accounting setup information and prevent unauthorized access. If you attempt to create an account password before creating a user with supervisor access rights, the system will prompt you to create a supervisor password.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

To turn account passwords on or off:

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. If you want to turn account passwords on:
 - a. Select Turn account passwords on....
 - b. Select Yes, turn account passwords on.
 - c. Select OK.
- 3. If you want to turn account passwords off:
 - a. Select Turn account passwords off....
 - b. Select Yes, turn account passwords off.
 - c. Select OK.
- 4. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 234 of 367

Accounting options when running mail

The following accounting options are available when you select an account while running mail.

- Creating a new account
- · Adding sub account to selected account
- Editing the selected account
- Deleting the selected account
- Choosing columns
- · Managing account search criteria
- Viewing unlocked accounts only

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, you must have supervisor access rights to create, edit, add or delete an account.

Selecting an account while running mail

If your system uses accounting, you must select an account in order to run mail. Follow the steps below if the selected job on the Run Mail screen does not contain an account, or if you want to select a different account.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.
- 2. Select the **Accounts** button in the Job Properties list box. The Select Account screen displays. All of the accounts on your system are listed on this screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 235 of 367

3. Select the appropriate account and then select **OK**.

Note:

A padlock icon indicates that an account is locked. If you select a locked account, you will be prompted to type in the account password.

4. The system returns to the Run Mail screen. You are now ready to process mail against the selected account. If you want to include the account as a permanent part of the job, save your changes.

Changing account search criteria

The Manage account search criteria option allows you to change the account search settings on your system.

- 1. On the Run Mail screen, select the **Accounts** in the Job Properties list box. The Select Account screen displays.
- 2. Select the **Options** button.
- 3. Select Manage account search criteria.... The Account search criteria dialog displays.
- 4. Select the appropriate search options in the Search by: list.
 - Account Name
 - Account Code
 - Account description
- 5. Select **OK** when you are done making your changes.

Choosing the columns that appear when viewing accounts

If your system uses accounting, you can select the columns of information you want to appear on the Select Accounts screen, and modify the order in which they appear.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 236 of 367

The Account name, Sub account name, and Sub sub account name columns cannot be removed or reordered.

- 1. On the Run Mail screen, select **Accounts** in the Job Properties list box. The Select Account screen displays.
- 2. Select the Options button.
- 3. Select Choose columns.... The Choose Columns screen displays.
- 4. To add a column to the Select Accounts screen:
 - a. Select a column in the Available columns: list.
 - b. Select the Add button.
- 5. To remove a column from the Select Accounts screen:
 - a. Select a column in the **Show these columns in this order:** list.
 - b. Select the Remove button.
- 6. To change the order of the columns on the Select Accounts screen:
 - a. Select a column in the Show these columns in this order: list.
 - b. Use the **Move** buttons to move the column up or down in the list.
- 7. Select **OK** when you are done making your changes. The Select Accounts screen displays with the new column order.

Searching for an account

If your system uses accounting, you can use the account search field to locate an account to process mail against, or when selecting an account to edit, delete or to create a new account level.

The account search field is located on the Select Accounts screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 237 of 367

- Select the Search field.
- 2. If necessary, change the account search criteria.
- 3. Type in the search term. As you type, the best match is displayed in the Search Results tab.

You can use hyphens as shortcuts to search for specific accounts, sub accounts, and sub sub accounts.

- The first hyphen stands for the highest level (account).
- The second hyphen stands for the next-highest level (sub account).
- The third hyphen stand for the next-highest level (sub sub account).
- No hyphen in front of the keywords means no shortcuts are used.

Note:

The hyphen shortcut can only be used to search within columns displayed on the screen (i.e. you cannot search for a sub account if the sub account column is not present).

- 4. If the appropriate account is highlighted, select **OK**. If more than one account is identified as a match, select the appropriate account and then select **OK**.
- 5. If prompted, type in the account password and select **OK**.

Viewing unlocked accounts only

If a password is assigned to an account, a padlock icon will appear next to the account name in the account list. You can set your system to show only unlocked accounts (accounts that do not require a password) when viewing the account list.

- 1. On the Run Mail screen, select the **Accounts** button in the Job Properties list box. The Select Account screen displays.
- 2. Select the **Options** button.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 238 of 367

- 3. Select the **Show unlocked account only** check box.
 - A check mark indicates that only unlocked accounts will appear in the account list.
 - An empty check box indicates that all accounts will appear in the account list.
- 4. The system updates the account list to correspond with the option you selected.
- 5. Select an account and the select **OK** to return to the Run Mail screen.

Clearing an account while running mail

If you want to clear the account you have selected while running mail, select the **End account** option on the Run Mail screen. This will remove the selected account from the Job properties list box on the Run Mail screen. You can then select another account to process mail against.

Note:

If the selected account is saved as part of the job, clearing the account on the Run Mail screen does not delete the account from the job. You can select *Reload job* at any time to restore the original job settings.

Ending a batch

A batch is used to track the number of pieces of mail processed for each job or mail run. The batch can be cleared at the end of a run or just before starting a new run.

To end a batch, select **End Batch** on the Run Mail screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 239 of 367

All about transactions

What is a transaction?

A transaction records the following job properties when running mail: user (if applicable), account, class/fee, job ID, postage mode (Key in Postage, Attached Scale, WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®), etc.).

If any of these properties change, then the transaction will close automatically.

Note:

A transaction is often referred to as a batch.

Other reasons a transaction can close automatically:

- If you power up with a transaction that was not closed prior to power down.
- When you attempt to print external reports.
- When the date changes (at midnight).
- Before accounting data is uploaded to the web.
- · Before a transaction is transferred.

If your system has the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) feature, the weight break for each piece of mail is tracked as part of the transaction. If the class changes due to auto class switching within a mail run then the system will automatically open a new transaction. As mail pieces are processed it is possible that the class will change back and forth (i.e. 1st Class and Priority). The system will record the mail pieces to the correct transaction if this happens. When the transaction ends then the system will store two separate transactions as part of the batch.

Managing transactions

Once a transaction has been processed, you can view and edit it within the Manage Accounts application. In addition, you can create filters to select a group of transactions on your system for viewing

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 240 of 367

and editing.

Viewing transactions

Follow the steps below to view the transactions that have been processed on your system.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Transactions.
- Select View and edit transactions. The Filter Transaction List screen displays.
- 4. You can select a new filter from the Saved Filters list, or you can add or edit criterion to *create a new filter*.

To select a saved filter:

- a. Select Saved Filters.
- b. Select a filter from the list and then select **OK**.
- 5. Select **View Transactions**. The Transaction List screen displays with a list of transactions that match the criterion of the filter you selected.
- 6. If you want to add or remove the columns of information that appear on the Select Accounts screen, or to modify the order in which they appear, select **Columns...**.
- 7. To add a column to the Transaction List screen:
 - a. Select a column in the Available columns: list.
 - b. Select the **Add** button.
- 8. To remove a column from the Transaction List screen:
 - a. Select a column in the Show these columns in this order: list.
 - b. Select the **Remove** button.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 241 of 367

- 9. To change the order of the columns on the Select Accounts screen:
 - a. Select a column in the Show these columns in this order: list.
 - b. Use the **Move** buttons to move the column up or down in the list.
- Select **OK** when you are done making your changes. The Transaction List screen displays with the new column order.
- 11. If you want to view transactions using a different filter, select Filter list....
- 12. Select **Done** to return to the Transactions screen.

Editing transactions

Follow the steps below to edit the transactions that have been processed on your system. When you edit a transaction, you are changing the account a transaction was processed against.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Transactions.
- Select View and edit transactions. By default, the Filter Transaction List screen displays with
 the criterion from the previously selected filter. You can select a new filter from the Saved Filters
 list, or you can add or edit criterion to create a new filter.

To select a saved filter:

- a. Select Saved Filters.
- b. Select a filter from the list and then select **Next**.
- 4. Select **View transactions**. The View and Edit Transactions screen displays with a list of transactions that match the criterion of the filter you selected.
- 5. Select the transaction you want to edit.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 242 of 367

6. Select the **Actions** button on the bottom of the screen and then select **Edit transactions**. The Edit Transaction screen displays.

Note:

You cannot edit a transaction created with a PSD (meter) that is not currently installed on your mailing and shipping system or a PSD that is inactive.

- 7. Select the **Account** field. The Select Account screen displays.
- 8. Select the appropriate account and then select **OK**.
- 9. Select **OK** to return to the transaction list.
- 10. Select **Done** to return to the Manage Accounts screen.

Filtering the transaction list

A filter is a set of criterion used to select a group of transactions on your system for viewing and editing.

There are many examples of why you might want to use a filter. For example, you might want to view all transactions that were entered during a specific date range (e.g., between April 1 and April 15) that does not exactly match a standard week, month or other period. Or you might want to view all the transactions that were entered for a group of accounts during the current month.

Once you have created a filter, you can save it for future use.

Filter criterion

A filter can be comprised of any or all of the following criterion.

- Date This option allows you to search for transactions processed during a specific date/time range. It is required for all filters.
- Account This option allows you search for transactions that have been processed against a specific account or accounts.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 243 of 367

Creating a transaction filter

Follow the steps below to create a new filter for transactions. For more information about transaction filters, refer to *Filtering the Transaction List*.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Transactions.
- 3. Select **View and edit transactions**. By default, the Filter Transaction List screen displays with the criterion from the previously selected filter.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 244 of 367

4. Select the **Add criterion** button to add or remove criterion contained in the filter.

Note:

The button name will vary depending upon the criteria present in the filter.

Add or edit the date criterion

- a. Select the **Date** option.
- b. Select Next.
- c. Select the period you want to search for transactions: custom, today, yesterday, this week, last week, current period, last period, year to date, or last fiscal year.
- d. If you selected custom date:
 - i. Select the **Period start date** field. Select a date from the calendar and then select **OK**.
 - ii. Select the **Period end date** field. Select a date from the calendar and then select **OK**.
- e. Type in the start time:
 - i. Select **Hour: Minute:** field. Type in the start time in HH:MM format and select **OK**.
 - ii. Select am or pm.
- f. Type in the end time:
 - i. Select **Hour: Minute:** field. Type in the start time in HH:MM format and select **OK**.
 - ii. Select am or pm.
- g. Select OK.

Add criterion

- a. Select the **Account** option.
- b. Select Next.
- c. Select the Add Accounts button.
- d. Select the accounts you want to search for transactions. A check mark indicates that an account has been selected.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 245 of 367

- e. Select **OK**. A list of the accounts you selected will appear.
 - If you do not want to view transactions for a particular account, select **Remove**.
 - If you want to clear the account list and start again, select **Remove all accounts**.
 - Select Add accounts to add additional accounts to the list.
- f. Select OK.
- 5. Select **Save as** to save the filter. Type in the filter name and select **OK**.
- 6. Select View transactions to view the transaction list with the filters applied.

Editing a transaction filter

Follow the steps below to create a filter.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Transactions.
- 3. Select **View and edit transactions**. The Filter Transaction List screen appears.
- 4. Select Saved filters....
- 5. Select the appropriate filter and then select **Next**.
 - To add criterion to the filter, select **Add or remove criterion...**. Refer to *Creating a Transaction Filter* for more information.
 - To modify existing filter criteria, select the appropriate criterion and make your changes. Refer to *Creating a Transaction Filter* for more information.
 - To remove existing filter criteria, select the appropriate criterion and then select Remove Criteria. The system returns to the Filter Transaction List screen.
- 6. Select **Save** to save your changes.

Deleting a transaction filter

Follow the steps below to delete a filter.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 246 of 367

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Transactions.
- 3. Select View and edit transactions.
- 4. Select Saved filters....
- 5. Select the appropriate filter and then select **Delete**.
- 6. Select **OK** to remove the filter from the list.
- 7. Select **Cancel** to return to the Filter Transaction List screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 247 of 367

All about surcharges

Surcharges allow you to add a fee to actual mail costs during the accounting and reporting process. If you set up a surcharge in the Accounts application, you are creating a global surcharge, or surcharge that will be applied to each and every transaction processed by the mailing system.

If select and edit a surcharge on the Run Mail screen, you are applying a batch surcharge, or a surcharge that is customized for a specific transaction. The batch surcharge values revert to the global surcharge settings when you close the job, reload the job, or when the batch is ended.

You can apply a surcharge per piece of mail, per transaction, and/or per transaction percentage.

- An amount per mail piece surcharge is calculated by multiplying the number of pieces processed by the surcharge setting. This surcharge can be set anywhere from -1.00 to 1.00.
- An amount per transaction surcharge is applied to each batch (or transaction) run on the system. This surcharge can be set anywhere from -50.00 to 50.00.
- A percentage per mail piece surcharge is calculated multiplying the postage cost of the entire batch by the percent transaction setting. This surcharge can be set anywhere from -100% to 100%.

Note:

The dollar amount entered can be either positive or a negative. A negative amount indicates a discount will be applied to the postage amount for the piece of mail or transaction. A positive amount indicates a surcharge will be applied to the postage amount for the piece of mail or transaction.

Setting Up and Editing Global Surcharges

You can create global surcharges, or surcharges that will be applied to each and every transaction processed by your mailing system.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 248 of 367

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights. If you are using Business Manager accounting, this feature is available to all users.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Surcharges.
- 3. Select or deselect the surcharge methods as necessary. A check mark appears in the check box adjacent to the Surcharge name if it has been selected.
- 4. To edit a surcharge value, select Edit.
 - Type in the appropriate value in the field provided.
 - Select an amount above zero if you want to add to the postage amount for the piece or mail or transaction.
 - Select a minus amount below zero if you want to subtract from the postage amount for the piece of mail or transaction.
 - b. Select OK.
- 5. Select **Done** to apply your changes and return to the Home screen.

Selecting a surcharge while running mail

When you select a surcharge while running mail, it will override global surcharges on your system (if present). When you close the job, reload the job, or when the batch is ended, the system will revert to the global surcharge settings for the system.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 249 of 367

All three global surcharges must be selected in order for the surcharge options to appear on the Run Mail screen. Refer to Setting Up and Editing Global Surcharge Options for more information.

Follow the steps below if you want to add, edit or remove a surcharges from the selected job on the Run Mail screen. Before you begin, ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen.

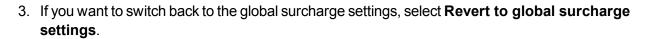
If you want to edit a specific surcharge:

- Select the surcharge you want to edit in the Job Properties list box. The Edit surcharge dialog appears.
- 2. Type in the appropriate value in the field provided.
- 3. Select how you want the value to be applied.
 - Select **Surcharge** if you want to add to the cost of the mail piece.
 - Select **Discount** if you want to subtract from the cost of the mail piece.
- 4. Select **OK** to return to the Run Mail screen.

If you want to add or remove a surcharge:

- 1. Select **Add or remove a surcharge...**. The Apply Surcharges screen appears.
- 2. Select or deselect the surcharge methods as necessary. A check mark appears in the check box adjacent to the Surcharge name if it has been selected. If you select a surcharge, the Edit surcharge dialog appears.
 - a. Type in the appropriate value in the field provided.
 - b. Select how you want the value to be applied.
 - Select Surcharge if you want to add to the postage amount for the piece of mail or transaction.
 - Select **Discount** if you want to subtract from the postage amount for the piece of mail or transaction.
 - c. Select OK.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 250 of 367



4. Select **OK** to return to the Run Mail screen.

 Pitney Bowes
 Connect+ Series Operator Guide
 April, 2016

 Page 251 of 367

All about Job IDs

If you use accounting, your mailing system has the ability to track mail runs using Job IDs. Job ID tracking allows you to track broader categories that may span multiple account names. It is commonly used for tracking expenses of projects accessed by multiple departments within the organization like client jobs or grants. These entries can be scanned or entered manually by the operator before running mail

- You can set up the system to require Job IDs in order to process mail and to automatically clear Job IDs at the end of each batch.
- Job IDs are selected on the Run Mail screen.

Requiring and autoclearing Job IDs

You can set up the system to require Job IDs in order to process mail and to automatically clear Job IDs at the end of each batch.

Note:

If users are enabled on your system, this feature is only available to users with supervisor access rights. If you are using Business Manager accounting, this feature is available to all users.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Job IDs.
- 3. Select **Required** if you want prevent the job from being run unless a Job ID is selected.
 - Selecting this option for Job ID 1 means you must select a Job ID 1 to process mail.
 - Selecting this option for Job ID 2 means you must select a Job ID 2 to process mail.
 - Job ID 1 and Job ID 2 options must be set individually. Requiring Job ID 1 does not automatically do the same for Job ID 2.
- 4. Select **Autoclear after every batch** if you want to automatically clear the Job ID when a batch is selected.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 252 of 367

- Selecting this option for Job ID 1 means the system will clear the Job ID 1 at the end of each batch.
- Selecting this option for Job ID 2 means the system will clear the Job ID 2 at the end of each batch.
- Job ID 1 and Job ID 2 options must be set individually. Autoclearing Job ID 1 does not automatically do the same for Job ID 2.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Selecting Job IDs while running mail

Job IDs are selected on the Run Mail screen. Depending on your account settings, you may be required to enter a Job ID 1 and/or Job ID 2 before processing mail.

- 1. Ensure that the appropriate job is *open* and selected on the *Run Mail* screen
- 2. Select **Job ID 1** in the Job Properties list box.
 - If you know the Job ID 1, type in the ID number and select **OK**.
 - If you want to see a list of recently used Job ID 1's, select View all recent Job ID 1's. Select
 the appropriate Job ID 1 and then select OK. If necessary, you can use the arrow keys to scroll
 through the list.
 - If you want to remove the Job ID 1 from the job, select Clear Job ID 1.
- 3. Select **Job ID 2** in the Job Properties list box.
 - If you know the Job ID 2, type in the ID number and select **OK**.
 - If you want to see a list of recently used Job ID 2's, select View all recent Job ID 2's. Select
 the appropriate Job ID 2 and then select OK. If necessary, you can use the arrow keys to scroll
 through the list.
 - If you want to remove the Job ID 2 from the job, select Clear Job ID 2.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 253 of 367

All about accounting reports

Accounting reports are one way to get information about a specific account, or series of accounts. A number of accounting reports come loaded on your system.

Account Detail report

The Account Detail report lists a summary of pieces, postage and surcharges for an account or all accounts that have been charged for the time period specified for the report.

Account Summary report

The Account Summary report contains a summary of the pieces and charges by account for a specific time period. It also contains the total number of pieces processed and postage charged for the selected time period.

Quick Profile report

The Quick Profile report lists the summary of pieces, postage and surcharges for all of the accounts on your system.

Transaction Log report

The transaction log report lists the transaction ID, account, pieces, postage, surcharge and total amount charged for each transaction during the time period specified.

Account List report

The Account List report contains the accounts that have been defined in the system. The accounts are sorted by account name, then by sub account and sub sub account.

This report also lists the code, name, status, and description (if entered) for each account.

Weight Break by Account report

The Weight Break by Account report contains a summary of the pieces and postage for each weight break by specific account or all accounts showing the carrier/class used.

Weight Break by Carrier report

The Weight Break by Carrier report contains a summary of the pieces and postage for each weight break by carrier and class.

Weight Break by Job ID 1 report

The Weight Break by Job ID 1 report contains a summary of the pieces and postage for each weight

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 254 of 367

break by specific Job ID 1, showing the carrier and class used.

Account Detail by Class report

The Account Detail by Class report contains a summary of the carriers, classes of mail, pieces, postage, fee amount, surcharges and total charge for the selected account(s). This report also contains the year to date pieces, year to date postage, year to date surcharges, and year to date total postage.

Transaction Log by Detail report

The Transaction Log Detail report contains a the date, start time, end time, total time, carrier, class of mail, mailrun ID 1 (Job ID 1), mailrun ID 2 (Job ID 2), operator, total weight, total pieces, postage, fees, surcharge amount, total charged, and mode type of transactions processed against the selected account (s).

Daily Snapshot report

The daily snapshot report lists the meter name, last piece print time, class of mail, pieces, postage amount, total pieces and total postage run on your system during the current day. Since this is a daily report, the counts are reset at midnight (system time) each day.

You can also view your accounting data using the optional INVIEW™ Mailstream Management Suite (MMS). This web-based product is available when you sign in to your account on the Pitney Bowes website.

A note about Business Manager:

If your mailing and shipping system uses Business Manager accounting, you can also view and print reports using the Business Manager Host PC. Refer to the help file provided with the Business Manager application for more information.

Printing accounting reports

Follow the steps below to print an accounting report. An attached printer is required to print an accounting report.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Reports.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 255 of 367

- 3. Select View & print reports.
- 4. Select the report you want to print.
- Select the **Next** button.
- 6. If necessary, you can modify the report settings. Select a setting, and then make the appropriate changes. The settings vary, depending upon the report selected.
- 7. If necessary, select the **Actions** button and save the report for future use.
 - If you want to save the report with the existing name, select **Save**. When prompted, select **Yes, save**.
 - If you want to save the report with a new name, select **Save as**. When prompted, select **Yes**, **save as**. Type in the report name and select **OK**.

If the report was created by Pitney Bowes, "Save as" is the only available option.

- 8. Select the **Actions** button.
- 9. Select **Print report**. The report will print on the attached printer.

Exporting accounting reports

Accounting reports can be exported to a USB drive in .csv, .xls and .pdf formats. Follow the steps below to export an accounting report.

- 1. Insert a USB drive into an available *port* on the mailing system.
- 2. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 3. Select **Reports**.
- 4. Select the View & print reports.
- 5. Select the report you want to export.
- Select the **Next** button.
- 7. If necessary, you can modify the report settings. Select a settings, and the make the appropriate selections. The settings vary, depending upon the report selected.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 256 of 367

- 8. If necessary, select the **Actions** button and save the report for future use.
 - If you want to save the report with the existing name, select **Save**. When prompted, select **Yes, save**.
 - If you want to save the report with a new name, select **Save as**. When prompted, select **Yes**, **save as**. Type in the report name and select **OK**.

If the report was created by Pitney Bowes, "Save as" is the only available option.

- 9. Select the **Actions** button.
- 10. Select **Export report**. The report export screen displays.
- 11. Select the File name field.
 - 1. Type in the file name.
 - 2. Select OK.
- 12. Select the **Export to:** field.
 - a. Select the location where you want to export the file.
 - If you want to export the file to the root of the USB drive, select the drive in the Export to: field.
 - If you want to export the file to specific folder on the USB drive, select a folder and then select the **Open** button. Repeat this process until you have drilled down to the folder you want to use, then select the folder in the Export to: field.
 - b. Select Select this folder.
- 13. Select the export file type.
- 14. Select OK.
- 15. The system will alert you when the export is complete. Select **OK**.
- 16. Select Cancel to return to the report list.

Viewing accounting reports

Follow the steps below to view an accounting report.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Reports.
- Select View & print reports.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 257 of 367

- 4. Select the report you want to view.
- 5. Select the **Next** button.
- 6. If necessary, you can modify the report settings. Select a setting, and then make the appropriate changes. The settings vary, depending upon the report selected.
- 7. Select the View report button.
- 8. If necessary, select the **Actions** menu to save, delete, export or print the report. Select the appropriate option and follow the prompts.
- 9. Select Done.

Viewing and printing the daily snapshot report

The Daily Snapshot report provides a quick view (summary) of a day's accounting. It requires minimal processing so it is ready for viewing within around two minutes of the transactions being uploaded. It's a great tool to use for completing end-of-day reports when you do not have time to wait for the standard reports to process.

Follow the steps below to view and/or print the daily snapshot report.

Note:

You cannot export this report.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Reports.
- 3. Select **Daily Snapshot Report**. The report appears onscreen for viewing.
- 4. Select **Refresh** to ensure you are viewing the most up-to-date information.
- 5. Select **Print Report**. The report will print to the attached printer.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 258 of 367

Setting up the default reporting period for accounting reports

Before you can generate accounting reports, you need to select the default reporting period settings for your system. These settings include the start and end dates of your fiscal year, as well as number of reporting periods (none, annual, twice yearly, quarterly, and monthly).

- The default fiscal year runs from January 1st to December 31st.
- The default reporting period is calendar month.

Follow the steps below to set the default settings for the fiscal year and reporting period.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Reports.
- 3. Select **Report Period**.
- 4. Select the calendar icon next to the Start date of fiscal year field.
 - a. Select a date on the calendar that appears.
 - b. Select **OK**.

The End date of fiscal year is determined based on the start date you enter. It cannot be entered manually.

- 5. Select the **Default reporting period** field.
 - a. Select a report period type.
 - b. Select OK.
- 6. The list box on the screen is updated and provides a view the of the reporting periods based on the selections you've made.
 - Use the Previous year and Next year buttons to view the reporting periods for the previous and next year.
 - Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the list of reporting periods for the current year.
- 7. Select **OK** to return to the Reports screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 259 of 367

Default report period types

The following options are available when selecting the default report period. The calendar month reporting period is the system default.

- Calendar month
- Calendar quarter
- · Calendar semi-annual
- Every 4 weeks
- Period 4-4-5
- Period 4-5-4
- Period 5-4-4

Using a 4-4-5 calendar to manage accounting periods

A 4-4-5 calendar divides the year into four quarters, each with 13 weeks. Each quarter is divided into two four week months and one five week month. The division can occur in any order, hence the 4-4-5, 4-5-4, and 5-4-4 accounting periods.

- Period 4-4-5 Select this option if you want to use the 4-4-5 calendar to manage accounting periods, with two four week months followed by one five week month.
- **Period 4-5-4** Select this option if you want to use the 4-5-4 calendar to manage accounting periods, with a four week month followed by a five week month and then another four week month.
- **Period 5-4-4** Select this option if you want to use the 5-4-4 calendar to manage accounting periods, with a five week month followed by two four week months.

Setting account report preferences

Follow the steps below set account report preferences. These settings allow you to choose how accounts are identified in reports and the account level reporting occurs at.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- Select Reports.
- 3. Select Preferences.
- 4. Select how you want accounts identified: by **Name** or by **Code**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 260 of 367

- 5. Select the account level you want to report at: **Account**, **Sub account** or **Sub sub account**.
- 6. Select OK.

Saving a copy of an accounting report

Follow the steps below to save a copy of an accounting report.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Reports.
- 3. Select View & print reports.
- 4. Select the report you want to save a copy of.
- 5. Select Save as....
- 6. Enter a name for the report.
- 7. Select OK.

Deleting accounting reports

Follow the steps below to delete an accounting report.

- 1. Select the **Manage Accounts** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Reports.
- 3. Select View & print reports.
- 4. Select the report you want to delete.
- 5. Select Delete report....
- 6. Select **Yes**, **delete**. The report is removed from the list.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 261 of 367

9 - Reports

In this section

All about reports	263
Printing a Report	264
All about funds and refill reports	265
Confirmation services receipt	267

All about reports

Creating a report is quick and easy way to keep an accurate record of all your mailing activities. You can print reports on tape or envelopes using the internal mailing system printer.

Available reports

The following report types are available on your system. Accounting reports are optional, and will only appear if you have the feature enabled.

- Funds and Refill Reports
- Accounting Reports

Note:

Accounting reports are accessed via the Manage Accounts application.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 263 of 367

Printing a Report

- 1. Select the **Reports** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen. The Reports screen displays.
- 2. Select the report you want to print.
- 3. The print dialog box appears.
 - If you want to print the report on an envelope, place an envelope on the feed deck and select the **Start** button.
 - If you want to print the report on a piece of tape, select the **Tape** button.
- 4. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 264 of 367

All about funds and refill reports

The funds and refill reports allow you to print information about funds and postage refills. To print information, select **Reports** from the Home screen.

Refill Receipt report

The Refill receipt provides detailed information on the last postage refill performed on your system.

- Refill date: date of the refill.
- Refill performed by: the user or meter that performed the refill. The user name displays if users are
 enabled on your system. If a meter name displays, the refill was an automatic meter refill. (This
 information only appears in the report if users are enabled or if automatic meter refill is turned on.)
- Postage in meter before refill: postage funds available for processing before the refill was performed.
- Refill amount: amount of the refill.
- Postage in meter after refill: postage funds available for processing after the refill was performed.
- Prepaid balance: money remaining in your Postage By Phone® postage account.
- Purchase Power available: your credit line with Purchase Power.
- PBP Account Number: your Postage By Phone® postage account number.
- Meter number: the number assigned to the meter.
- Meter name: the name assigned to the meter (optional).
- Printed: date and time the refill receipt was printed.

Refill Summary report

The Refill Summary report provides a history of the last 5 refills.

- . Refill Date: the date and time of the refill .
- Refill amount: amount of the refill.
- PBP Account Number: your Postage By Phone® postage account number.
- Meter number: the number assigned to the meter.
- Meter name: the name assigned to the meter (optional).
- Printed: date and time the refill summary was printed.

Funds report

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 265 of 367

The Funds report gives a summary of the funds used and available in the meter, total pieces run, and piece count.

- · Available: postage funds still available for processing.
- Used: postage funds spent since the mailing system was installed.
- Total pieces: total number of pieces imprinted with postage since the mailing system was installed.
- Control sum: the total of used funds and available funds.
- Resettable piece count: total number of pieces printed since the counter was reset.
- Piece count value: postage spent since the counter was reset.
- PBP account: your postage account number.
- Indicia number: the serial number for the indicia.
- Meter number: the number assigned to the meter.
- Meter name: the name assigned to the meter (optional).

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 266 of 367

Confirmation services receipt

Your system will prompt you to print a Confirmation Services Receipt for each confirmation services transaction that is processed.

- Package ID: the tracking number or package identification code
- Destination ZIP code: destination ZIP® Code of the package.
- Customer reference: the recipient name, invoice number, customer ID number, document number, etc. you used to identify the piece of mail.
- Mailing class: the class of mail used.
- Printed/Created: the date and time the report was printed.
- A fill-in space where you can write in the recipient and delivery address.

This report contains additional information if it is printed on an optional attached printer.

- PBP account number: your postage account number.
- Meter number: the number assigned to the meter.
- Meter name: the name assigned to the meter (optional).

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 267 of 367

10 - Refilling your Meter

In this section

All about postage	269
Pitney Bowes postage account	270
Your postage meter	271
Refilling your meter	272
Checking your balance at Pitney Bowes	273
Postage remaining	274
Postage refill settings	275
Viewing the refill history	276
Viewing the meter information	277
Uploading postal information	279
Withdrawing the meter	280

All about postage

The Funds application allows you monitor and manage funds, view refills, set postage refill values, upload postal information and view meter information.

- **Meter Funds**: select this tab to *check your postage account balance*, *view the postage remaining on your system* or to *Refill your meter*.
- Last 5 Refills: select this tab to *view the history* of the last 5 refills performed on your system.
- **Refill Settings:** select this tab to *set the low funds warning amount and default refill amount* for your system.
- **Meter Information:** select this tab to *view the PSD information for your system* (including your postage account number and minimum/maximum postage refill values), upload postal information or withdraw your meter.

To access these options, select the **Funds** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen .

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 269 of 367

Pitney Bowes postage account

Your postage account is a Pitney Bowes service that you use to add postage to your meter. You can access the postage account 24 hours a day, 7 days a week through your mailing system. For more information, refer to the postage account materials provided with your system.

If you need assistance with the postage account, have your postage account number ready and call the Postage By Phone® System number.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 270 of 367

Your postage meter

The postage meter on your mailing system is a Postal Security Device (PSD) that incorporates the latest technology approved by the United States Postal Service to secure funds. This technology eliminates the need to perform physical inspections thereby making the system easier and more convenient to use. The PSD contains the funds and performs all of the calculations necessary to print postage indicia that comply with the latest USPS standards.

The United States Postal Service (USPS) licenses your meter and requires an electronic inspection of the meter. Periodically, your mailing system will be required to connect to your postage account as a means of inspecting the PSD (Postal Security Device) and validating information in your mailing system.

To ensure that your operations are not interrupted, the time periods for the Data Center Connection are pre-established in your system, and will give adequate warning to you when this connection may be required:

- The message "Postal inspection required" will first be shown approximately 21 days after your last connection. You can connect immediately to have the meter inspected or clear the message temporarily. If you clear the message, you enter a grace period that lasts approximately 7 days.
- The "Postal inspection required" message will appear each day for 7 days (when you power-up your system), and will only disappear after a successful connection.
- On the 28th day after your last successful connection, your mailing system will display a message indicating that you will not be able to print postage until the inspection is completed.
- Follow the prompts on your mailing system to make a successful connection.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 271 of 367

Refilling your meter

Use the Funds application to refill your meter.

- You can access the Funds application by selecting the Funds button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen, selecting the Postage in meter button on the bottom of the Run Mail screen, or selecting Add Postage to Meter when you receive a low funds warning or an insufficient funds error.
- 2. If necessary, select the **Meter Funds** tab.
- 3. If necessary, select the **Refill my Meter** button.
- 4. Select the appropriate refill amount option:
 - To add the same postage amount that was used during the last refill select the Last refill amount button.
 - To add the default postage amount select the **Default refill amount** button.
 - To add a different postage amount select the **Other amount** button. Type in the refill amount and then select the **OK** button.

Note:

The maximum and minimum postage refill amounts for your system are listed on the Meter information tab.

- When prompted, select Confirm. The system connects to the Data Center and begins to refill your meter.
- 6. The system will notify you when it finishes adding your postage. If you want to print a receipt select the **Print receipt** button.
 - To print the receipt on an envelope, place an envelope of the feed deck and select the Start button.
 - To print the receipt on a piece of tape, select the **Tape** button.
 - If you have an optional attached printer, select the **Print on document** button.
- 7. Select **Done** to exit the Funds application.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 272 of 367

Checking your balance at Pitney Bowes

Before refilling your meter, you should check the funds available through your postage account.

- 1. Select the **Funds** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. If necessary, select the **Meter Funds** tab.
- 3. Select **Get Balance** to obtain your current postage account balance. The system will notify you once the account balance has been updated. If you are using a LAN connection, and are constantly connected to your postage account, the balance updates automatically.
- 4. Select OK.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 273 of 367

Postage remaining

The postage remaining on your system displays on a button at the bottom of the Run Mail screen. You can also view the postage remaining and postage used on your system by selecting the **Meter Funds** tab in the Funds application.

To print a report of the postage available and postage used, refer to Funds and refill reports.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 274 of 367

Postage refill settings

There are two postage refill settings on your system: the low funds warning value and the default refill amount.

- The low funds warning value is the value at which the mailing system warns you that the funds remaining in the meter are getting low. When the available postage reaches the low funds warning value, an alert will display.
- The default refill amount is the dollar value that appears when manually refilling your meter.

Setting the low funds warning and the default refill amount

Use the Funds application to set the low funds warning and the default refill amount.

- 1. Select the **Funds** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **Refill settings** tab.
- 3. To set the low funds warning value, select the **Warn when postage in meter is below:** field.
 - a. Type in the postage amount.
 - b. Select **OK** when done.
- 4. To set the default refill amount, select the **Default refill amount**: field.
 - a. Type in the default refill amount.
 - b. Select **OK** when done.
- 5. Select **Done** once you have finished making your changes.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 275 of 367

Viewing the refill history

The Last 5 refills list provides a history of the last five refills that were performed on your system. This information includes the refill date, time, amount and the name of the user that performed the refill.

Note:

The user name displays if users are enabled on your system.

The refills are displayed in reverse chronological order (last refill first).

- 1. Select the **Funds** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **Last 5 refills** tab. The list of the last 5 refills displays.
- 3. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 276 of 367

Viewing the meter information

The Meter information tab displays the PSD (Postal Security Device) information for your system.

- 1. Select the **Funds** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **Meter information** tab to view the PSD information.
 - Status
 - Manufacturing ID number
 - Product ID number
 - ZIP code
 - PB PBI number
 - Software version number
 - Meter Model/PCN
 - Minimum and maximum postage values
 - Indicia serial number
 - Total piece count for the system
- 3. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Finding the minimum and maximum postage values

The maximum and minimum postage values can be viewed on the Funds screen. These values define the minimum and maximum refill amounts you can use when refilling your meter.

- 1. Select the **Funds** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- Select the Meter information tab.
- 3. The minimum and maximum postage values appear in the Postal Security Device (PSD) list on the left side of the screen.
- 4. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 277 of 367

Finding your postage account number

Often called your Postage By Phone account number, your postage account number can be viewed on the Settings screen.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the Internet & Network tab on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select the Intellilink® button.
- 4. Your postage account number appears in the Postage by Phone Account Number box.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 278 of 367

Uploading postal information

Periodically, your system needs to connect to Pitney Bowes and upload postal information.

Postal information upload includes all the information within the pieces run through the machine. This includes, but is not limited to, postage used, class of mail, and number of pieces. If the accounting feature is used, the postal information upload will also include account data.

- 1. Select the **Funds** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **Meter Information** tab.
- 3. Select Upload postal information.
- 4. The system will alert you when the upload is complete. Select **OK**.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 279 of 367

Withdrawing the meter

Contact your Pitney Bowes representative if you need to return your meter.

Note:

Pitney Bowes must authorize a meter withdrawal.

When instructed, follow the procedure here.

- 1. Select the **Funds** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select the **Meter information** tab.
- 3. Select Withdraw meter.
 - If Pitney Bowes has authorized the withdrawal, a dialog box appears indicating that funds are being transferred and the meter is being withdrawn. Select **OK** once the process is complete.
 - If Pitney Bowes has not authorized the withdrawal, a dialog box appears indicating that the meter cannot be withdrawn.
- 4. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 280 of 367

11 - Rates and updates

In this section

Checking for rates and updates automatically	282
Using the rates and updates scheduler	283
Checking for rates and software updates	284
Viewing the update history	285

Checking for rates and updates automatically

If you have enabled the *rates and updates scheduler* to automatically check for and download updates, the system will check for any available updates at the time you have set.

Important:

You must install the rates and software updates once they are downloaded.

- 1. Select the **Rates and Updates** button when an update is available for download. The system then downloads any new updates that are available.
- 2. Once the download is complete the Install updates dialog screen displays. You are prompted to install updates.
- 3. A countdown message appears on the Install updates dialog screen beginning at 5:00 minutes. The system will automatically install the update when the countdown reaches 0:00 minutes unless you select *Install now* or *Install later*.
 - Select **Install now** if you want to install the updates at this time. Follow the prompts to complete the update installation.
 - Select Install later if you want to install the updates at another time. The system opens the
 Rates and Updates Scheduler. You can use the scheduler to postpone the installation up to 4
 times.

Note:

- Try to schedule the update for a time when the system is powered up but not in use.
- The rates and updates button shows an exclamation mark as a reminder that there are files waiting to be installed.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 282 of 367

Using the rates and updates scheduler

Your Connect+ Series system can be set up to check for and download rates and software updates automatically at a specific time each day. The Rates and Updates button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen will show an exclamation mark when updates become available.

Note:

You must *install the rates and software updates* once they are downloaded.

Turning the scheduler on for the first time

To turn the scheduler on:

Note:

Once you turn the update scheduler on it cannot be turned off.

- 1. Select **Set up Scheduler** when prompted, or select **Rates and Updates** on the Home screen and then select **Updates Scheduler**.
- 2. Type in the time of day you want the system to check for rates and updates.
- 3. Select Save Scheduler to save your changes.

Changing the scheduler settings

- Select Rates and Updates on the Home screen and then select Updates Scheduler.
- 2. Follow steps 2-3, above, to change the scheduler settings.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 283 of 367

Checking for rates and software updates

When you select the Rates and Updates button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen, the system checks for available updates and downloads (for example, new graphic images) that it finds. Your system must be connected to the network to run this application.

- Select the Rates and Updates button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen. The system checks
 for updates and additional features. If updates are available, the system begins the download and
 displays the amount of time required to complete it.
- 2. Once the download is complete the Install updates dialog screen displays. You are prompted to install updates.
- 3. A countdown message appears on the Install updates dialog screen beginning at 5:00 minutes. The system will automatically install the update when the countdown reaches 0:00 minutes unless you select *Install now* or *Install later*.
 - Select **Install now** if you want to install the updates at this time. Follow the prompts to complete the update installation.
 - Select Install later if you want to install the updates at another time. The system opens the
 Rates and Updates Scheduler. You can use the scheduler to postpone the installation up to 4
 times.

Notes:

- Try to schedule the update for a time when the system is powered up but not in use.
- The rates and updates button shows an exclamation mark as a reminder that there are files waiting to be installed.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 284 of 367

Viewing the update history

- 1. Select the **Rates and Updates** button from the Home screen. The system will check for updates. Refer to *Checking for Rates and Software Updates* for more information.
- 2. Select **Updates History** to view a list of the updates that have installed on your system.
 - You will see the title, size, effective date and installation date of each installed update.
 - Updates can be sorted by column in ascending or descending order.
- 3. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 285 of 367

12 - System Setup

In this section

Personal settings	28
Application settings	289
Internet and network settings	29
System settings	29
Hardware settings	31

Personal settings

The Personal settings allow you to customize the touchscreen and display for your use.

- Login: If users are enabled on your system, you can use this feature to change your password or password hint.
- **Display properties:** Use this feature to adjust the brightness and contrast of the touchscreen.
- **Touchscreen**: Use this feature to *calibrate the touchscreen* if you find it is not responding to touch commands.

To access these options, select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen and then select **Personal**.

Changing your password or password hint

If user logins are required on your system, and you are a user with operator access, you can change your password or password hint in the Personal settings area.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. If necessary, select **Personal** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Login.
- 4. Select the **Change password** button to change your password.
 - a. Enter your old password and select **OK**.
 - b. Enter your new password and select **OK**.
 - c. Re-enter your new password to confirm, and select **OK**.
- 5. Select the **Password hint** field to add or change your password hint.
 - a. If necessary, select the Clear button to remove the old password hint.
 - b. Type in the new password hint and select **OK**.
- 6. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Adjusting the touchscreen brightness and contrast

Follow the steps below to adjust the brightness and contrast of your display on your mailing system.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 287 of 367

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Personal** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Display properties.
- 4. Select and drag the control button to adjust the brightness or contrast. Use the + and buttons for a more precise selection.

Calibrating the touchscreen

You may need to calibrate the touchscreen if you find it is not responding to touch commands. Follow the steps below to calibrate the touchscreen on your mailing system.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Personal** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- Select Touchscreen.
- 4. Select the **Calibrate...** button. Follow the onscreen prompts to complete the calibration process.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 288 of 367

Application settings

The Application settings allow you to *enable tracking services prompts* while running mail and to *enter or edit the USPS® Mailer ID*.

To access these options, select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen and then select **Applications**.

Enabling tracking services prompts

Use this option to enable tracking service prompts while running mail. You can enable the following prompts: Apply label, Enter customer reference, Enter BPOD for Signature Confirmation, Print receipt, Upload records, and Print postal manifest.

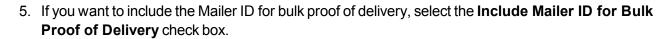
- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Applications** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- Select Tracking Services.
- 4. Select the tracking services prompts you want to appear while running mail. A check mark indicates that a prompt is selected.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Entering the USPS® Mailer ID

Follow the steps below to enter and store the *Mailer ID* on your system.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Applications** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Tracking Services.
- 4. Select the **Mailer ID** field. If you have already entered a Mailer ID while running mail, the ID is saved in this field. If necessary, you can change the Mailer ID here.
 - a. Type in the Mailer ID.
 - b. Select OK.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 289 of 367



6. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 290 of 367

Internet and network settings

The Internet and Network settings allow you to:

- View the IntelliLink® connection parameters for your postage account.
- Reset the factory settings (if necessary).
- View and export the communications settings. Once exported, the communication setting
 information is used to set up the SendSuite Xpress™ or Ascent™ interface.
- View the inserter communications settings.
- Initiate *Remote Assistance* when instructed by a Pitney Bowes service representative.

To access these options, select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen and then select **Internet & Network**.

Viewing the IntelliLink® settings

This option allows you to view the connection parameters for your postage account. The IntelliLink® settings are viewed within the Settings application.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Internet & Network from the list on the left side of the screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 291 of 367

- Select IntelliLink. The Postage by Phone postage account number, Distributor URL, and Backup data center URL for the system are displayed. These fields are automatically populated by Pitney Bowes.
 - If necessary, select a field, type in the parameter and select OK.

Note:

Changes to the IntelliLink® parameters may result in errors when connecting to Pitney Bowes.

- If necessary, select the Reset to Factory Settings button to revert to the default values for these fields.
- 4. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Viewing and exporting communication settings

This option allows you to view the communication settings for your system and export them to a USB drive. The communication settings are viewed within the Settings application.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Internet & Network from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select **Communication Settings**. The IP address, Synchronous port, Asynchronous port, Host name, Machine ID, and Machine password for the system are displayed. These fields are automatically populated by Pitney Bowes.

If it is necessary for you to export the communications settings, insert a USB drive into an available *port* on the mailing system.

The communication settings are typically exported to set up the SendSuite Xpress[™] and Ascent [™] interface with the Connect+ Series system.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 292 of 367

- 1. Select Export settings to USB drive....
- 2. Select the File name field.
 - a. Type in the file name.
 - b. Select OK.
- 3. Select the **Export to** field.
 - a. Select the folder on the USB drive where you want to export the file.
 - b. Select Open.
- 4. Select **OK** to export the communication settings.
- 5. The system will alert you when the export is complete. Select **OK**.
- 6. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Viewing DI900™/DI950™ inserter communication settings

This option allows you to view the communication settings for your inserting system interface. The communication settings are viewed within the Settings application.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. The Settings screen displays. Select **Internet & Network** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Inserting System.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 293 of 367

System settings

The System settings allow you to customize your mailing system to meet your needs.

- **Timeouts**: Use this feature to set the system timeouts.
- Clock: Use this feature to synchronize the system clock, set the time zone, and to enable or disable Daylight Saving time.
- Scanner Settings: This feature allows you to configure the optional barcode scanner to easily locate an account on your system. You can scan for account name, account code, job name, job ID (1 or 2). When the scanner detects the account it automatically fills in the appropriate field or fields on the Run Mail screen.
- Automatic Date Advance: Use this feature to set your system to advance the date at the mail
 pickup time.
- **Users:** Use this feature to enable users on your system as well as *create*, *edit and delete users* and *assign access levels*.
- **Configuration:** Use this feature to *view the status of rates, software, features, and graphic updates* on your system.

To access these options, select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen and then select **System**.

Advancing the date automatically

If your mail is picked up at a certain time each day, you can set your system to advance the date at the mail pickup time. Type in the time when you want the date to advance. As soon as your system reaches the time you set, it automatically advances the date 24 hours and prints that date on your postage.

Note:

The date on the postage should correspond to the date when your mail goes to the post office.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 294 of 367

For example, if your mail goes to the Post Office at 3:00 PM each day, then set the date advance to "03:00 PM". Any mail processed after 3:00 PM will have the date for the following day printed on it. This ensures that the date printed on the mail piece corresponds with the date it is brought to the Post Office.

Follow the steps below to advance the date automatically.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Automatic Date Advance.
- 4. Select **Yes** if you want the date to advance automatically. The time of day to advance date fields appear.
- 5. Select the **Hour: Minute** field.
 - a. Type in the time (hour and minute) when you want the date advance to occur. The hour must be set using a 12 hour clock (i.e. 01 to 12). The minute must be set from 00 and 59. If no value is entered in the minute box, it will be set to "00" by default.
 - b. Select am or pm.
 - c. Select OK.
- 6. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Postal information upload warning

If you have *enabled the postal upload warning* the system will alert you when the number of postal information files reach the threshold that has been set. When the warning appears you are presented with two options: *Yes, upload now* or *No, upload later*.

To upload postal information now:

- 1. Select the **Yes, upload now** option. The postal information upload will begin.
- 2. The system will alert you when the upload is complete. Select **OK**.
- Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

If you do not want to upload postal information at this time, select **No, upload later**. When you are ready to upload the information, follow the instructions provided in *Uploading Postal Information*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 295 of 367

Enabling or disabling the postal information upload warning and setting the threshold

If your Connect+ Series system has a good network connection, it will attempt to upload postal information automatically when the screen saver is displayed, when you shut down the system down and when you enter Manage Accounts. Postal information can also be uploaded manually through the Funds application and in the Run Mail application after running tracking services or through the postal information upload warning.

The *postal information upload warning* will appear when the postal information files reach a specific threshold. This warning is enabled by default on your system.

- If you have a slow network connection and uploads are taking too long, lower the threshold. The upload warning will appear more frequently.
- If you have a fast network connection and uploads are going quickly, you can raise the threshold if
 you feel the warnings are appearing too frequently. This will allow the system to create more files
 before the warning appears.
- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Postal Information Upload.
- 4. Select the **Enable Postal Upload Warning** check box.
 - A check mark indicates that the warning is enabled.
 - If the check box is empty the warning is disabled.
- 5. Select and drag the control button along the slide bar to adjust the threshold. Use the + and buttons for a more precise selection.
- 6. Select **OK** to save your changes.

Setting the system clock

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 296 of 367

- Select Clock.
- 4. Select **Synchronize clock** to synchronize the clock.
- 5. To turn daylight saving time on or off select **On** or **Off**.

Note:

Turn Daylight Saving Time on in the Spring and off in the Fall.

- 6. Select the appropriate time zone from the Time Zone list.
- 7. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Setting up the scanner

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- Select Scanner Settings.
- 4. There are five tabs along the top of the screen related to scanner settings.
 - The **Default Scan type** tab allows you to specify the type of account field the scanner will search for when it scans a barcode that does not contain a prefix.
 - The Accounting Prefixes tab allows you to use barcodes to automatically enter information on the Run Mail screen (for example, the account name).
 - The Concatenate Scans tab contains the characters you can use to join multiple barcodes into a single scan.
 - The Barcode Auto-Enter tab allows you to turn on/off the ability of the system to
 automatically enter data scanned from a barcode into the Connect+ screen without forcing the
 operator to press the Enter key after the barcode is completely scanned.
 - The **Scanner Diagnostics** tab allows you to verify what is actually being read by the scanner in the barcode without having to run mail.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 297 of 367

Setting the default scan type

The Default Scan Type tab allows you to specify the type of account field the scanner will search for when it scans the barcode.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Scanner Settings.
- 4. Select the **Default Scan Type** tab. Select one of the following account fields that you want the scanner to search for when scanning the barcodes.
 - **None** Use this option if you do not want a default account type or if you will be scanning multiple fields.
 - Account name This can be any name you assign to an account, sub account or sub sub account. For more information, refer to Account Attributes.
 - **Account code** This is a unique code that you can assign to identify the account, sub account or sub sub account. For more information, refer to to *Account Attributes*.
 - **Job name** A job can contain set values for such items as the account name, postage amount, class, carrier, a special service, or mode such as Attached Scale or Differential weighing. For more information, refer to *All About Jobs*.
 - Job ID 1and Job ID 2 Your accounting system can track mail runs using Job IDs. Refer to All About Job IDs for more information.

Setting the accounting prefixes

If you need to scan multiple account fields, you need to create barcodes that contain a 1 or 2 digit prefix. The prefix identifies the field you are scanning.

Use the **Accounting Prefixes** tab to define the prefixes. You can use this if you are transferring accounts from another accounting system or from a set of pre-printed barcodes.

As you scan a barcode, the system reads the value of the field and enters that value in the appropriate field in the Run Mail screen. For example, if the barcode contains:

- the account name, the Account name field displays the name of the account (and sub and subsub account if present)
- account code, the chargeable Account name associated with account code appears in the Account name field

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 298 of 367

• job name, the name of the job appears as a tab at the top of the Run Mail screen indicating that this is now the active job

To define the prefixes:

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Scanner Settings.
- 4. Select the **Accounting Prefixes** tab. The screen displays the default prefixes assigned to the account fields.
 - Account Name A\$
 - Account Code C\$
 - Job Name P\$
 - Job ID 1 J\$
 - Job ID 2 K\$
- 5. Select the field or fields and type in the appropriate prefix. For example, if you are scanning barcodes that contain account codes beginning with the prefix C\$, you can use the default value. If the account code contain a different prefix enter that value.

Combining multiple barcodes into a single scan

If you need to combine multiple barcode scans into a single barcode, you will need to define concatenate join characters. For example, the typical barcode scanner can only accept a maximum of 30 characters. If you want to scan an account name that contains more than 30 characters, say 50 characters, you add a "concatenation character" at the end of the first 30 characters. These first 30 characters with the concatenation character at the end, would be on the first line and the second 20 characters would be on the second line. When you scan these two barcode lines, the system will combine them into a single barcode account value.

To select the join character for combining multiple barcode scans:

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Scanner Settings.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 299 of 367

- 4. Select the **Concatenate Scans** tab. The screen displays the available join characters.
 - + (plus)
 - % (percent)
 - . (period)
 - / (forward slash)
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Turning barcode auto-enter on/off

You can set up your Connect+ Series so that after it scans in a barcode value and displays it on the screen, it requires the operator to press the **Enter** key to accept that value. You can do this if you want to be sure that an operator verifies that the correct barcode has been scanned. By default, the system will automatically enter the value as soon as it scans in the barcode.

To enable or disable auto-enter:

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Scanner Settings.
- 4. Select the **Barcode Auto-Enter** tab. Select the **On** option button to turn on the Auto-Enter feature; select **Off** turn it off.
- 5. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Using scanner diagnostics

The Scanner Diagnostics tab allows you to verify what is actually being read by the scanner in the barcode without having to run mail.

To determine what the scanner reads in the barcode:

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select **Scanner Settings**.
- 4. Select the Scanner Diagnostics tab.
- 5. Scan the barcode. The values of the scanned barcode display on the screen, for example, the

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 300 of 367

Account name, Scan type, Prefix and Value.

6. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Setting system timeouts

System timeouts can be set for your mailing system. You can set any of the system timeouts from five minutes to four hours, in one minute increments.

- **Default Job Timeout:** The default job timeout option allows you to specify how much time you want to allow the system to remain idle before it the default job is reloaded on the Run Mail screen. The default timeout is 20 minutes. If necessary, this timeout can be disabled.
 - If the ENERGY STAR® shutdown timeout is not feature enabled on your system, the default job timeout can be set anywhere from one minute to four hours.
 - If the ENERGY STAR® shutdown timeout is feature enabled on your system, the default job timeout must be less than or equal to it in duration.
- **ENERGY STAR® Shutdown:** The ENERGY STAR® shutdown timeout will save money, and help protect the environment. Use this option to specify how long the system remains inactive before it goes into "sleep". The default timeout is 40 minutes. Use the power button to turn the system back on. The ENERGY STAR® shutdown timeout is an optional feature.
- Screen Saver Timeout: The screen saver timeout option allows you to specify how much time you want to allow the system to remain idle before the screen saver appears. The timeout range is 5 minutes to 4 hours.

System timeouts are set within the Settings application.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Timeouts.
- 4. Select the appropriate timeout from the list and then select the **Open timeout** button.
- 5. Select and drag the control button along the slide bar to adjust the timeout. Use the + and buttons for a more precise selection.
- 6. If you have selected the default job timeout, you can enable or disable it by selecting the timeout check box. A check mark indicates that the timeout is enabled.
- 7. Select **OK** when you have finished making your changes.
- 8. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 301 of 367

ENERGY STAR®

What you should know about ENERGY STAR®

If your system is equipped with the ENERGY STAR it will automatically shutdown after it has been inactive for 40 minutes. You must restart your system to be able to perform operations again - whether your system timed-out during the day or overnight. This restart process normally takes several minutes. The 40 minute timeout period is required to meet ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency. See below to learn more about ENERGY STAR®.

What is ENERGY STAR®

ENERGY STAR is the trusted, government-backed symbol for energy efficiency helping us all save money and protect the environment through energy-efficient products and practices. The ENERGY STAR label was established to: 1) Reduce greenhouse gas emissions and other pollutants caused by the inefficient use of energy; and 2) Make it easy for consumers to identify and purchase energy-efficient products that offer savings on energy bills without sacrificing performance, features, and comfort.

How ENERGY STAR® works on your system

60 seconds before the ENERGY STAR timeout occurs, a message appears on your screen informing you that the system will shutdown in 60 seconds. It begins the countdown and displays the amount of time left on the screen. An audible beep is also emitted during this time. You can cancel the shutdown during the 60 second countdown by:

- Selecting the Cancel shutdown button.
- Selecting the *ENERGY STAR® timeout setting* button. This takes you to System settings where you can modify the timeouts.
- Closing the ENERGY STAR® message window.
- Selecting the help button on the ENERGY STAR message window.

Pitney Bowes Commitment

Pitney Bowes is committed to designing and manufacturing energy efficient equipment because it lowers the operating costs and helps preserve the environment. As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Pitney Bowes has determined that the Connect+™ Series system meets the ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency with the optional (no charge) of an automatic SHUT DOWN mode. This minimizes energy consumption in compliance with the 2009 revised ENERGY STAR® standards for the mailing equipment category.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 302 of 367

How is the ENERGY STAR® Mode enabled?

The ENERGY STAR® Mode is an OPTION, and is not standard with your base configurations for the Connect+™ Series. If this option is not part of your sales configuration, the Connect+™ Series system will not allow the automatic SHUT DOWN to occur.

Is the system energy efficient without ENERGY STAR® enabled?

Yes. Every step was taken to manufacture an energy efficient system. However, the 2009 ENERGY STAR® guidelines for the Mailing Machine category did not accommodate the leap in technology taken by the Connect+™ Series, where PC-technology is now used for mail processing and envelope printing. PC-technology works differently than mailing machines of the past – that had simple on-off switches, and were driven primarily by gears and hard-coded software. PC-technology requires a full system shutdown to ensure the highest integrity of software applications and hardware components.

User roles and access rights

There are two levels of user access, supervisor and operator. If users are not set up, the system defaults to supervisor access.

Users with supervisor access to the system can create, edit and delete accounts and users can turn user logins on and off. In addition, supervisors can manage operator access to certain system functions.

Refer to *User Roles Setup* for more information about managing operator access.

Users with operator access to the system can perform most system functions, with the exception of account and user management and any functions that have been restricted by the supervisor.

- Setting up a single user allows you to log in and log out of the system, effectively locking it from use.
- You can create an unlimited number of users on your system.

Enabling user logins

Set up at least one user with a password to protect your system from unauthorized access.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- Select System from the list on the left side of the screen.
- Select Users.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 303 of 367

- 4. On the User setup tab, select **Enable user logins...**. You will be prompted to create a user with supervisor access rights.
 - a. Type in the user name and then select **OK**.
 - b. Type in the password and select **OK**.
 - c. Re-type in the password to confirm and select **OK**.
 - d. Select the **Password hint** field to add a password hint. Type in the hint and select **OK**.
 - e. Select **OK** once you have finished creating the user.
- 5. If you would like to add additional users, select **Yes, create another user**. If you do not want to add any additional users at this time, select **No, done creating users**.
- 6. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Follow the steps below to add a new user to your system.

Creating, editing and deleting users

You can *create users* as a security measure, to protect access to certain features and functions. Once you have created users, you can *edit user settings* including name, password and password hint. If you want to remove a user from the system you can *delete the user*.

Note: Supervisor access rights are required to manage users. Creating a user Note: Supervisor access rights are required to manage users.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 304 of 367

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- Select System from the list on the left side of the screen.
- Select Users.
- 4. Select **Add new**. The Create Users screen displays.
- 5. Select the **Username:** field to add the new user name. Type in the user name and select **OK**.
- 6. If passwords are required on your system, or if the user will have supervisor access, select the **Password** field. Type in the password and select **OK**.
- 7. Select the appropriate user role: operator or supervisor.
- 8. If necessary, select the **Password hint** field to add a password hint. Type in the hint and select **OK**.
- 9. Select **OK** to return to the user settings screen.
- 10. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

User role setup

If you have supervisor access to the system, you can manage the access rights granted to users with the operator role.

- Any changes you make to access rights will apply to all operators.
- Supervisors always have full access to system functions.

What system functions can I manage?

You can manage operator access the following functions:

- Change data center backup URL
- Change default refill settings
- Change distributor URL
- Perform a balance inquiry
- Postage Refill
- Print funds report on machine
- Print refill receipts
- · Print refill summary
- Reset batch counter

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 305 of 367

- Reset IntelliLink Factory Settings
- · Withdraw a meter
- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- Select Users.
- 4. Select the Roles setup tab.
- 5. Select the **Operator** user role.
- 6. Select the functions in the **Allow access to:** list that you want users to be able to perform.
 - A check box with a check mark indicates that all operators will have access to the function.
 - An empty check box indicates that all operators will not have access to the function.
- 7. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Editing a user

Note:

Supervisor access rights are required to manage users.

Follow the steps below to edit a user on your system.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select **Users**.
- 4. Select a user to edit. If necessary, use the up and down arrow buttons to navigate through the list.
- 5. Select Edit.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 306 of 367

- 6. Select the user attribute you want to edit.
 - **Password:** Select this option to require, remove or change the password for the user. Passwords are required for users with supervisor access.
 - **User role:** Select a different option from the list to change the access level assigned to the user.
 - Password hint: Select this option to add or change the user's password hint.
- 7. Select **OK** to return to the user settings screen.
- 8. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Deleting a user

Note:

Supervisor access rights are required to manage users.

Follow the steps below to delete a user.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- Select Users.
- 4. Select the user you want to delete. If necessary, use the up and down arrow buttons to navigate through the list.
- Select **Delete**. If you are deleting the only user on your system, a warning message will appear indicating that user logins will be turned off and all system security will be disabled. If account passwords are being used, they will be disabled as well.
- 6. Select Yes, delete user.
- 7. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 307 of 367

Turning off user logins

Note:

Supervisor access rights are required to manage users.

Turning off user logins will disable all system security. Account passwords, if used, will be disabled and all system functions will be unlocked. User information will be stored on the system, should you want to enable users again at a later date.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Users.
- 4. On the User setup tab, a check mark appears in the Enable user logins... check box. Select **Enable user logins...** to remove the check mark from the check box.
- 5. A warning message displays. Select **Yes, turn off user logins**.

Viewing the status of rates, software, features, and graphic updates

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **System** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Configuration.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 308 of 367

- 4. There are five tabs along the top of the screen related to rates and software status.
 - The **Messages** tab tells you whether your rates and software are up-to-date.
 - The Basic system info tab contains the system name, model, serial number and meter number.
 - The Rates & software tab contains the active and pending rates and the associated effective dates.
 - The Features & graphics tab contains a list of the rates and optional software features
 available on your system, as well as the hardware components that make up the your system.
 For example, hardware components include the type of scale and its capacity, and the type of
 connectivity (wireless LAN).
 - The **Credits** tab contains copyright and permission notices for the software on your system.
- 5. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 309 of 367

Hardware settings

The Hardware settings allow you to view general information about your system, perform routine maintenance procedures and to adjust hardware settings.

- General: Select this option to view the model and serial number.
- **Printer**: Select this option to replace the ink cartridges, replace the print head, or print a test pattern.
- **Tape:** Select this option to rewind tape for removal and to bring tape to the ready position once a new roll has been inserted.
- **Sealer:** Select this option to view the location of the envelope sealant bottle and the moistener pad and to *adjust the moistness of the sealer*.
- Attached scale: Select this option to zero the scale or to change the vibration setting.
- Feeder: Select this option to adjust the waiting for envelope timeout.
- WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®): Select this option to select the weighing mode or to set the weight limit.

Viewing your model and serial number

The model and serial number are helpful to have on hand for rate changes, phone support, and service.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Hardware** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select **General**. Your system name, model number, PSD PCN, PSD serial number, printer PCN and printer serial number display on the screen.
- 4. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Changing the scale vibration setting

You can turn the vibration filter on if your mailing system is in an environment subject to vibrations, such as near air-conditioning vents or closing doors. If you select this, the scale will require more time to settle before displaying a weight.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 310 of 367

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Hardware** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Attached scale.
- 4. Select **Adjust for motion** to enable the vibration filter. Select **Normal** to disable the vibration filter.
- 5. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Zeroing the scale

You may need to zero the scale if the scale will not display zero weight.

Note:

Always make sure there is nothing on the scale when the system is powered up. At power up, the system will automatically zero the scale.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Hardware** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Attached scale.
- 4. Select Zero scale.
- 5. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Resetting the localization value

When you replace your attached scale, you are required to reset the localization value for the scale. Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the scale for instructions on resetting the localization value.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 311 of 367

Setting the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) weight limit

You can set the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY (W-O-W) weight limit to prevent the system from printing postage on pieces of mail that exceed a set weight.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Hardware** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY (W-O-W).
- 4. Select the **lbs.** field.
 - a. Use the numeric keypad to type in the weight in lbs.
 - b. Select the oz. field and type in the appropriate weight.
 - c. Select OK.
- 5. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Setting the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) Mode

If you have a Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 2000 or Connect+ 3000 mailing system, there are two WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY (W-O-W) mode settings: normal and precision.

Normal is the default mode. Precision mode allows you to obtain a more precise measurement of the weight and dimensions of your mail pieces.

Follow the steps below to set the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY (W-O-W) mode.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Hardware** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY (W-O-W).
- 4. Select the appropriate mode.
- 5. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 312 of 367

Setting the waiting for envelope timeout

Use this option to specify how much time to allow before the feeder stops after the last envelope is processed. You can set system to run until Stop is selected on the Run Mail screen, or you can set the system to stop running after a set amount of time, from 5 to 30 seconds.

This reduces the wear on your machine and acts as a safety measure if you leave the machine unattended.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select **Hardware** from the list on the left side of the screen.
- 3. Select Feeder.
- 4. Select Waiting for envelopes timeout.
- 5. Select the appropriate length of time.
 - Select **Stop machine automatically after rollers stop** if you want the feeder to stop after the last envelope is processed.
 - Select **Wait for envelopes for:** if you want the feeder to continue running for a short amount of time after the last envelope is processed. Select and drag the control button to adjust the timeout. Use the + and buttons for a more precise selection.
- 6. Select the **Home** button to return to the Home screen.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 313 of 367

13 - Maintenance

In this section

Installing a new tape roll	315
Refilling the envelope sealant bottle	318
Refilling the tape sealant bottle	319
Moistener maintenance Printer maintenance	320 320

Installing a new tape roll

The mailing system uses *gummed or adhesive tape*. A red stripe appears along its edge approximately 36 inches from the end to indicate a low tape condition. Replace the tape when the stripe appears. You can install a new roll before the system actually runs out of tape.

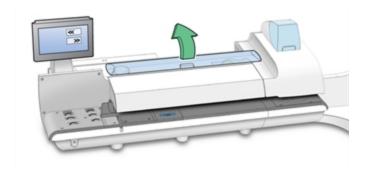


Caution:

If you do not use Pitney Bowes supplied tape, you will not be able to determine when the tape is running out and this may cause a jam. The red stripe on the tape notifies you that you are running low on tape. There is also a black stripe that tells the machine when it is en the system detects the black stripe on the tape it stops the machine. At this point there

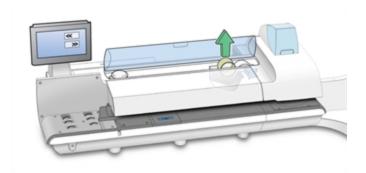
out of tape. When the system detects the black stripe on the tape it stops the machine. At this point there is still a small amount of tape on the roll.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Hardware.
- 3. Select Tape.
- 4. Select << Rewind to bring the tape back for removal.
- 5. Open the supplies cover.

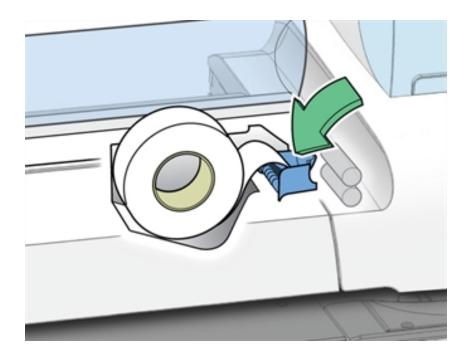


Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 315 of 367

6. Remove the old tape core from the feeding area.



- 7. Tear or cut (preferred method) off the end of the new roll tape to leave a straight edge.
- 8. Drop the new roll tape into the well. Make sure the leading tape edge comes up from under the roll and to the right.
- 9. Select **Feed forward >>**. The system will advance the tape feed drive.
- 10. Insert the lead edge of the tape into the entrance guide. The system will advance the tape to the proper position.



11. Close the cover.

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 316 of 367

12. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

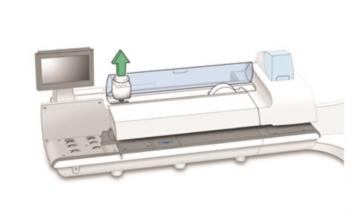
Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 317 of 367

Refilling the envelope sealant bottle

Your mailing system displays a message telling you when your E-Z Seal® Sealing Solution is running low. When you receive this message, your system can still seal approximately 50 envelopes.

Pitney Bowes recommends using E-Z Seal® Sealing Solution because it helps keep your moistener tank clean and improves sealing performance.

1. Open the supplies cover and lift out the envelope sealant bottle. The bottle is located to the far left of the tape roll.



- 2. Remove the cap from the bottle.
- Add enough E-Z Seal® to bring the level up to the bottom of the throat of the bottle.
 - Do not overfill the envelope sealant bottle.
 - Make sure you do not spill any solution in the tape well. If the tape gets wet, it can warp and cause a stoppage.
- 4. Replace and tighten the cap and return the bottle to its original position.
- 5. Close the supplies cover.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 318 of 367

Refilling the tape sealant bottle

Pitney Bowes recommends using E-Z Seal® Sealing Solution because it helps keep your moistener tank clean and improves sealing performance. Refill the tape sealant bottle when your E-Z Seal® Sealing Solution is running low.

- 1. Lift the tape sealant bottle out of the cradle. The bottle is located to the right of the printer module, behind the stacker.
- 2. Remove the cap from the bottle.
- 3. Add enough E-Z Seal® to bring the level up to the bottom of the throat of the bottle. Do not overfill the envelope sealant bottle.
- 4. Replace and tighten the cap and return the bottle to its original position.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 319 of 367

Moistener maintenance

You can clean the part of your mailing system that moistens the flap on the envelope. This part of the mailing system is the moistener pad assembly. If the seal quality does not improve after cleaning, you can replace the wick or moistener pad assembly as needed.

The following sections provide more information about the various aspects of moistener maintenance.

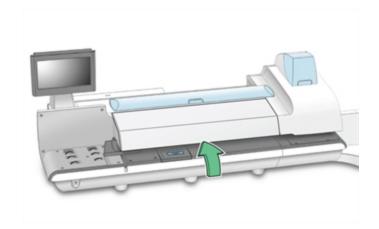
- Cleaning or Replacing the Moistener Pad Assembly
- · Cleaning or Replacing the Wick
- Adjusting the Moistness of the Sealer

Cleaning or replacing the moistener pad assembly

We suggest that you clean the moistener pad assembly from time to time to remove residue from the moistener pad. If wear of the moistener pad is affecting seal quality, you can replace the moistener pad assembly.

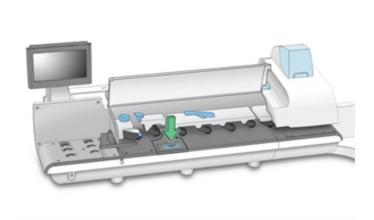
Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000 Systems

1. Lift the feed cover.

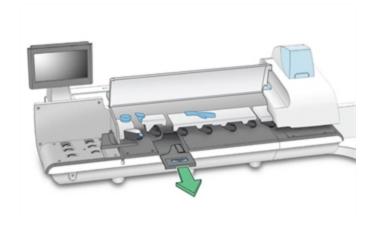


Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 320 of 367

2. Push down on the moistener pad assembly button.

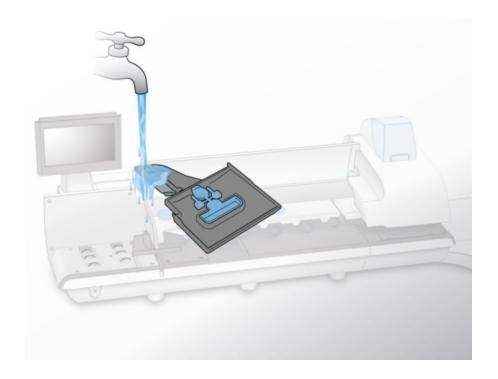


3. Grasp the moistener pad assembly and pull it straight out towards you.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 321 of 367

4. Clean the moistening pad by running the pad under warm water.



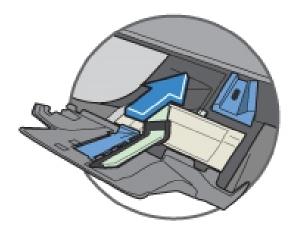
- 5. Replace the existing clean moistener pad assembly, or install a new one by pushing the assembly back on its track until it snaps into position.
- 6. Verify that the moistener pad assembly is perfectly level with the feed deck.
- 7. Close the feed cover and select **OK**.

Connect+ 3000 Systems

- 1. Lift the feed cover.
- 2. Pull up on the top release lever.
- 3. Use the blue notch to pull on and open the moistener deck.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 322 of 367

4. Grasp the moistener pad assembly and slide out and away from you.



- 5. Clean the moistening pad by running the pad under water.
- 6. Replace the existing clean moistener pad assembly, or install a new one by sliding the assembly back on its track until it snaps into position.
- 7. Push the moistener deck back into place.
- 8. Push down on the top release lever until it snaps into place.
- 9. Close the feed cover and select **OK**.

Adjusting the wetness of the sealer

You can adjust the wetness setting to increase or decrease the amount of sealant that is applied to the envelope. When you adjust this setting via the Settings application, you are setting the default for the system.

If adjust the wetness while *changing the sealing method* on the Run Mail screen, you are customizing the wetness setting for a specific job.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- Select Hardware.
- 3. Select Sealer.
- 4. Select the **Sealer settings** tab.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 323 of 367

- 5. Select and drag the control button to adjust the wetness. 1 is the driest setting; 9 is the wettest. Use the + and buttons for a more precise selection.
- 6. Select **Run test envelope** to test your adjustment.
- 7. Place an envelope on the feed deck and select **Start**. The system will feed and seal the envelope.
- 8. Check the envelope to ensure the moistness adjustment is correct.
- 9. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Cleaning or replacing the moistener wick

If the seal quality does not improve after cleaning the moistener pad assembly, you can replace the wick as needed.

Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 1000 and Connect+ 2000 systems

- 1. Open the supplies cover and lift out the envelope sealant bottle. The bottle is located to the left of the tape roll.
- 2. Lift the feed cover.
- 3. Push down on the moistener pad assembly button.
- 4. Grasp the moistener pad assembly and pull it straight out towards you.
- 5. Use two fingers to remove the wick.
- 6. Clean the wick by holding it under running water.
- 7. Slide the wick back into place. Gently press down on the wick to ensure it is seated properly.
- 8. Push the moistener pad assembly back on its track until it snaps into position.
- 9. Verify that the moistener pad assembly is perfectly level with the feed deck.
- 10. Close the feed cover.
- 11. Replace the envelope sealant bottle and close the supplies cover.
- 12. Select OK.

Connect+ 3000 systems

- Open the supplies cover and lift out the envelope sealant bottle. The bottle is located to the left of the tape roll.
- 2. Lift the feed cover.
- 3. Pull up on the top release lever.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 324 of 367

- 4. Use the blue notch to pull on and open the moistener deck.
- 5. Use two fingers to remove the wick.
- 6. Clean the wick by holding it under running water.
- 7. Slide the wick back into place. Gently press down on the wick to ensure it is seated properly.
- 8. Push the moistener deck back into place.
- 9. Push down on the top release lever until it snaps into place.
- 10. Close the feed cover and select **OK**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 325 of 367

Printer maintenance

The printer components, consisting of the ink cartridge and print head, require minimum maintenance to ensure clean, clear printing on your mail.

The following sections provide more information about the various aspects of printer maintenance.

- Printing a test sample
- Cleaning the print heads
- Low ink warning
- Out of ink warning
- · Replacing the ink cartridges
- Replacing the print heads
- Aligning the print heads

Printing a test pattern

You can print a test pattern to check the print quality of the postage indicia without spending any of your postage funds. If the sample has broken or missing lines, you may need to replace the ink cartridge or print head.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. The Settings screen displays. Select **Hardware**.
- 3. Select Printer.
- 4. Select either the Ink Cartridges or Print Head tab.
- 5. Select **Print test pattern**.
 - To print the test pattern on an envelope, place an envelope of the feed deck and select Start.
 - To print the test sample on tape, select **Tape**.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 326 of 367

- 6. Check the test pattern.
 - If the solid lines of the test pattern are unbroken, select **Image is OK Done**. Skip to step 7.
 - If the test pattern has missing or incomplete lines, select **Not OK Clean print head**. Once the cleaning operation completes, you will be prompted to print another test pattern. If the pattern still has broken or missing lines, you may need to replace the ink cartridge or print head.
- 7. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Cleaning the print heads

You can clean the print heads at any time to ensure optimal print quality.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Hardware.
- 3. Select Printer.
- 4. Select the Print head tab.
- 5. Select the **Clean** button. Print head cleaning takes approximately one minute. A progress bar indicates the cleaning status.
- 6. Once the cleaning process is complete, you will be prompted to *print a test pattern*.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 327 of 367

Low ink warning



WARNING!

Your system uses ink from the ink cartridges during normal maintenance cycles. You must maintain adequate ink supply in *all* of the cartridges (black and color) to keep the system in optimal working condition. Replace your ink cartridges promptly when warned.

Running the system with an empty ink cartridge may result in damage to printer components that are not covered under your service agreement.

The Low Ink warning initially displays when there is only enough ink for approximately 10 days of mailing. You can choose to ignore this warning.

The Low Ink warning displays again approximately two days before the ink runs out. You can print about another 300 postage indicia or leave the mailing system running for six days without printing. If you do not have a replacement cartridge, order one now.

Note:

Your actual ink usage will vary depending on whether you routinely print advertisements or inscriptions and how may pieces of mail you print per day.

Spot black (#2) low ink warning

If the spot black (#2) ink cartridge is low on ink, a special Low Ink warning will appear. Once the spot black (#2) ink cartridge is empty, printing mail will be disabled to avoid damage to the system. It is important to replace the spot black (#2) cartridge to avoid interruption to mail operation.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 328 of 367

When the spot black (#2) Low Ink warning appears, you can choose to ignore the warning or to install a new ink cartridge.

Out of ink warning

The Out of Ink warning displays when there is not enough ink left in the cartridge for your mailing system to print, and the system stops printing. In order to resume printing you must *replace the ink cartridge*.



Warning!

Your system uses ink from the ink cartridges during normal maintenance cycles. You must maintain adequate ink supply in <u>all</u> of the cartridges (black and color) to keep the system in optimal working condition. Replace your ink cartridges promptly when warned.

Running the system with an empty ink cartridge may result in damage to printer components that are not covered under your service agreement.

Spot black (#2) out of ink warning

If the spot black (#2) ink cartridge is out of ink, a special Out of Ink warning will appear indicating that printing mail has been disabled to avoid damage to the system.

In order to resume printing you can:

- Replace the ink cartridge
- Turn off spot black (#2) printing

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 329 of 367

Note:

If spot black (#2) printing is turned off, you can continue to print mail for 14 days. When the period expires you will need to reactivate spot black (#2) printing by installing a new ink cartridge. If you do not install a new ink cartridge spot black (#2) printing will be disabled permanently.

Replacing the ink cartridges

Replace the ink cartridges once you receive the low ink or out of ink warning.



Warning:

Use Pitney Bowes ink cartridges to ensure best printer performance. Other ink cartridges may cause: poor print quality, rejected/returned mail and uncovered service expenses.

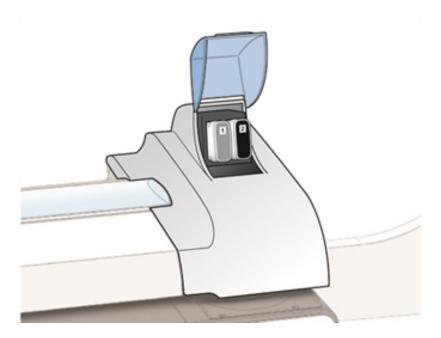
The ink in the cartridge may be harmful if swallowed. Keep new and used cartridges out of reach of children. Discard empty cartridges immediately.

Do not remove the ink cartridge if the print head is not installed. If the ink cartridge and print head are removed at the same time, ink from the print supply line will flow down the tube and squirt from the needle in the ink cartridge holder out into the printer and system interior.

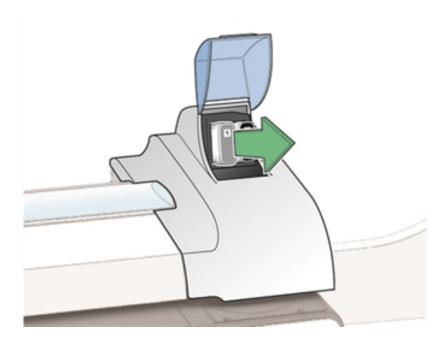
- 1. You can replace the ink cartridges by selecting **Replace ink cartridge** when the low ink or out of ink warning appears. You can also replace the ink cartridges at any time by:
 - a. Selecting the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
 - b. Select **Hardware**, then select **Printer**.
 - c. Select the **Ink cartridges** tab.
 - d. Select Replace ink cartridge.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 330 of 367

2. Open the ink cartridge cover.



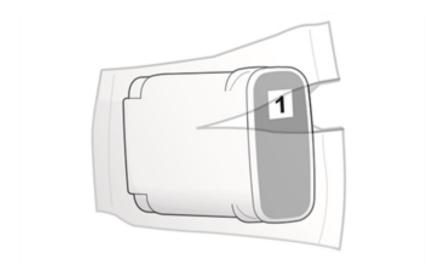
3. Pull the ink cartridge straight out.



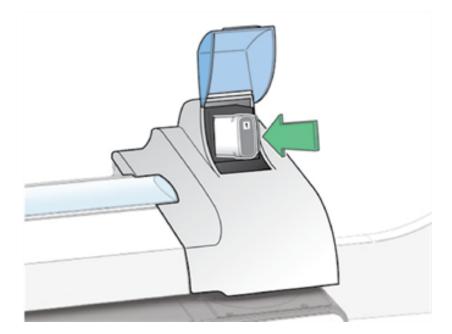
4. The system warns you that the ink cartridge is not installed. Select **Clear message**.

 Pitney Bowes
 Connect+ Series Operator Guide
 April, 2016
 Page 331 of 367

5. Remove the new ink cartridge from its packaging.



6. Hold the ink cartridge with the label facing upright and push into place.



- 7. Close the ink cartridge cover.
- 8. Select **Print test pattern** to verify that you have installed the ink cartridge correctly.

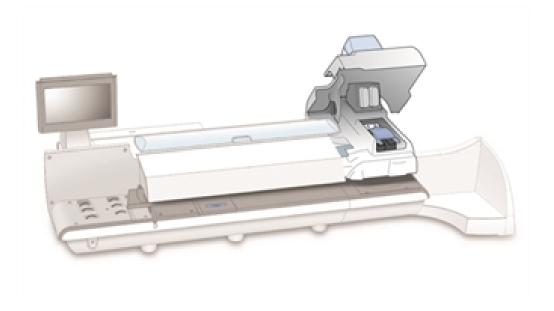
Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 332 of 367

9. Check the test sample. If the lines are solid and unbroken, the sample is acceptable. Select **Image** is **OK - Done**.

Replacing the print heads

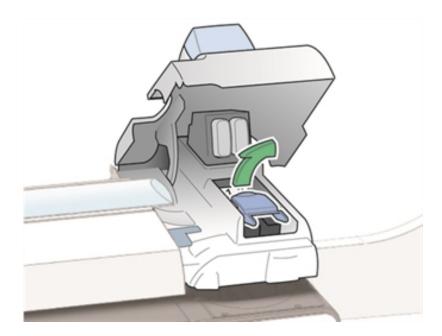
If you have cleaned the print head and changed the ink cartridge and the print quality of the test sample is still not satisfactory, replace the print head.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Hardware.
- 3. Select Printer.
- 4. Select the Print head tab.
- 5. Select the **Install new print head...** button.
- 6. Open the printer cover.

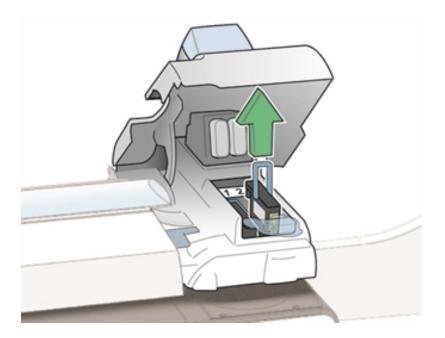


Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 333 of 367

7. Pull the blue latch all the way forward until it stops.

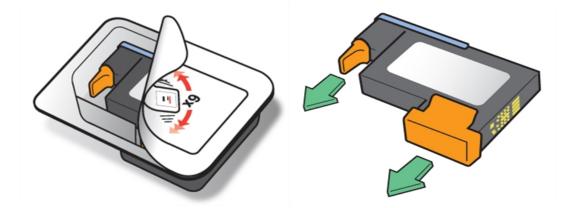


8. Lift the blue print head handle up to a vertical position and then lift the print head straight up and out.



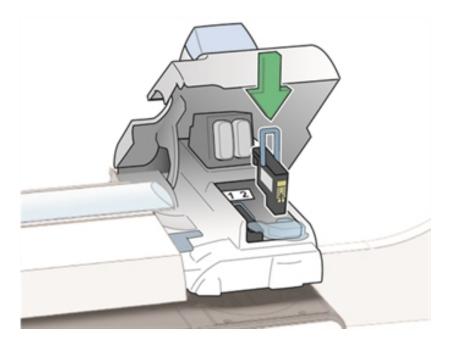
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 334 of 367

9. Remove the new print head from its packaging. Shake the print head three times.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 335 of 367

- 10. Insert the new print head.
 - The print head contact must be facing toward the front of the mailing system.
 - Make sure the blue handle is down.

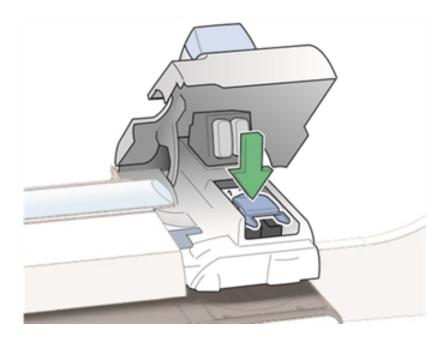


• During installation, only apply pressure to the center of the print head.



Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 336 of 367





- 12. Close the printer cover. The system will begin to prepare the print head. This process may take several minutes.
- 13. Once the print head preparation is complete, you will be prompted to print a test pattern on an envelope. Place and envelope on the feed deck and select **Start**.
- 14. Check the test pattern. If the lines are solid and unbroken, the pattern is acceptable. Select **Image** is **OK Done**.

Aligning the print heads

If your system has a color printing module, you should perform a print head alignment after you replace the print heads. The print head alignment can be done for both envelope and tape, envelope only or tape only.

You will need four or more envelopes of the same size to perform an envelope alignment.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. Select Hardware.
- 3. Select Printer.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 337 of 367

- 4. Select the **Print head** tab.
- 5. Select the **Align print heads** button. The Align Print Head screen appears.
- 6. Select the media type to align: Envelope and tape, Envelope only, or Tape only.

The alignment process varies, depending upon the media type you select. Follow the steps in the appropriate section to continue with the alignment process.

Envelope and tape alignment

- 1. Type in the length of your envelope.
 - a. Use the + and buttons to adjust the length measurement. The minimum and maximum lengths allowed are displayed on the screen.
 - b. Select **Next** to continue.
- 2. Select the location on the envelope where most full color graphics are printed.

Do not change this setting unless instructed to do so.

- Select Left if most full color graphics are printed as part of the return address.
- Select **Center (recommended)** if most full color graphics are printed as part of a graphic or text message.
- Select **Right** if most full color graphics are printed as part of a permit.

Select **Next** to continue.

- 3. Place an envelope on the feed deck and select **Start** to print the vertical test pattern.
- 4. Select the **Pattern number:** field.
 - a. Type in the number of the best aligned pattern.
 - b. Select OK.
 - c. Select **Next** to continue.
- 5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to print the second vertical test pattern.
- 6. If the alignment was successful, a message appears indicating that the print heads have been vertically aligned to print on envelopes. Select **Next** to continue to the horizontal alignment.
- 7. Place an envelope on the feed deck and select **Start** to print the first horizontal test pattern.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 338 of 367

- 8. Select the **Pattern number:** field.
 - a. Type in the number of the best aligned pattern.
 - b. Select OK.
 - c. Select **Next** to continue.
- 9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to print the second horizontal test pattern.
- 10. If the alignment was successful, a message appears indicating that the print heads have been horizontally aligned to print on envelopes. Select **Next** to continue to the tape alignment.
- 11. Select **Tape** to print the first vertical test pattern.
 - a. Select the Pattern number: field.
 - b. Type in the number of the best aligned pattern.
 - c. Select OK.
 - d. Select **Next** to continue.
- 12. Repeat step 11 to print the second vertical test pattern.
- 13. If the alignment was successful, a message appears indicating that the print heads have been vertically aligned to print on tape. Select **Next** to continue to the horizontal alignment.
- 14. Select **Tape** to print the first horizontal test pattern.
 - a. Select the Pattern number: field.
 - b. Type in the number of the best aligned pattern.
 - c. Select OK.
 - d. Select Next to continue.
- 15. Repeat step 14 to print the second horizontal test pattern.
- 16. If the alignment was successful, a message appears indicating that the print heads have been aligned to print on envelopes and tape. Select **Done**.

Envelope alignment only

- 1. Type in the length of your envelope.
 - a. Use the + and buttons to adjust the length measurement. The minimum and maximum lengths allowed are displayed on the screen.
 - b. Select **Next** to continue.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 339 of 367

2. Select the location on the envelope where most full color graphics are printed.

Do not change this setting unless instructed to do so.

- Select **Left** if most full color graphics are printed as part of the return address.
- Select **Center (recommended)** if most full color graphics are printed as part of a graphic or text message.
- Select **Right** if most full color graphics are printed as part of a permit.

Select **Next** to continue.

- 3. Place an envelope on the feed deck and select **Start** to print the vertical test pattern.
- 4. Select the Pattern number: field.
 - 1. Type in the number of the best aligned pattern.
 - 2. Select OK.
 - 3. Select **Next** to continue.
- 5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 to print the second vertical test pattern.
- 6. If the alignment was successful, a message appears indicating that the print heads have been vertically aligned to print on envelopes. Select **Next** to continue to the horizontal alignment.
- 7. Place an envelope on the feed deck and select **Start** to print the first horizontal test pattern.
- 8. Select the **Pattern number:** field.
 - a. Type in the number of the best aligned pattern.
 - b. Select OK.
 - c. Select **Next** to continue.
- 9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to print the second horizontal test pattern.
- 10. If the alignment was successful, a message appears indicating that the print heads have been aligned to print on envelopes. Select **Done**.

Tape alignment only

1. Select **Tape** to print the first vertical test pattern.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 340 of 367

- a. Select the Pattern number: field.
- b. Type in the number of the best aligned pattern.
- c. Select OK.
- d. Select **Next** to continue.
- 2. Repeat step 1 to print the second vertical test pattern.
- 3. If the alignment was successful, a message appears indicating that the print heads have been vertically aligned to print on tape. Select **Next** to continue to the horizontal alignment.
- 4. Select **Tape** to print the first horizontal test pattern.
 - a. Select the Pattern number: field.
 - b. Type in the number of the best aligned pattern.
 - c. Select OK.
 - d. Select **Next** to continue.
- 5. Repeat step 4 to print the second horizontal test pattern.
- 6. If the alignment was successful, a message appears indicating that the print heads have been aligned to print on tape. Select **Done**.

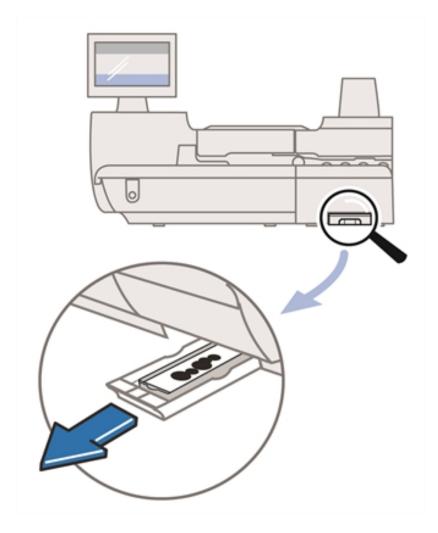
Replacing the ink pad in the waste ink tray

Ink is deposited in the waste ink tray during the print head cleaning process. The system will alert you when the ink pad in the waste tray is nearing full capacity. Once the ink pad is full, you will not be able to process mail until the pad has been replaced.

- 1. Select the **Settings** button in the Mailing tile on the Home screen.
- 2. The Settings screen displays. Select **Hardware**.
- 3. Select Printer.
- 4. Select the Waste Ink Tray tab.
- 5. Remove the ink pad, tray and rubber gloves from the packaging. Be sure to wear the rubber gloves to prevent ink from transferring to your hands.

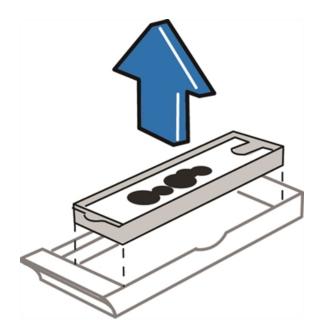
Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 341 of 367

6. Slide the waste ink tray out from beneath the printer module.

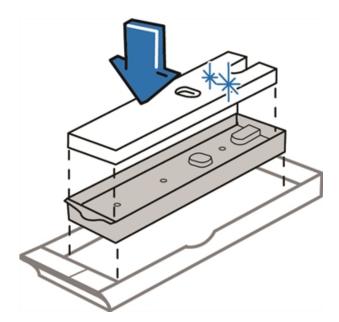


Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 342 of 367

7. Remove the old ink pad and ink pad tray.

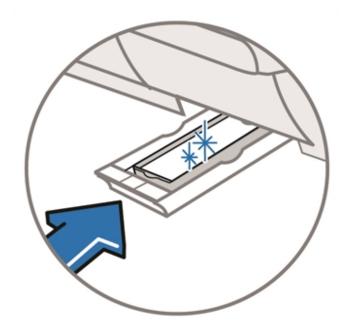


- 8. Place the old ink pad and ink tray in the plastic bag provided and discard.
- 9. Place the new ink pad and ink tray in the waste ink tray.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 343 of 367

10. Slide the waste ink tray back in place beneath the printer module.



- 11. Select **Ink pad replaced** on the touchscreen to confirm that the waste ink tray pad has been replaced.
- 12. Select **Done** to return to the Home screen.

Turning off spot black (#2) printing

If the spot black (#2) ink cartridge is out of ink, a special Out of Ink warning will appear indicating that printing mail has been disabled to avoid damage to the system.

You can turn spot black (#2) printing off, and can continue to print mail for 14 days. When the period expires you will need to reactivate spot black (#2) printing by installing a new ink cartridge.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 344 of 367

Note:

If you do not install a new ink cartridge spot black (#2) printing will be disabled permanently. If you choose to permanently disable spot black (#2) printing, you can continue to print your mail. However, a customer care representative will need to install a new printing system at a cost to you if you wish to use spot black (#2) printing in the future.

To turn off spot black (#2) printing:

- Select Turn off spot black (#2) ink printing when the Out of Ink warning appears. If the "out of spot (#2) ink" warning error appears on the Run Mail screen, select Turn off spot printing to view the Out of Ink warning.
- 2. Review the terms and conditions.
 - a. Select I have read and agree with these conditions.
 - b. Select Yes, turn black ink printing off.
- 3. A warning appears indicating that your system needs to be reconfigured to turn off spot black (#2) printing. Select **Yes**, **proceed**.
- 4. Follow the prompts to remove the ink cartridge and reconfigure the system.
- 5. Once the system has been reconfigured, you will be prompted to print test patterns on tape. Select **Ready**.
- 6. Select **Tape**.
- 7. Check the test pattern.
 - If the solid lines of the test sample are unbroken, select Image is OK Done.
 - If the test sample has missing or incomplete lines, select Not OK Clean print head. Once
 the cleaning operation completes, you will be prompted to print another test sample. If the
 pattern still has broken or missing lines, you may need to replace the ink cartridge or print
 head.

Once the test pattern has been approved, an alert message will appear on the Run Mail screen indicating that you have 14 days to reactivate spot black (#2) ink. In addition, a similar warning will appear on the Home screen each time you power up the system.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 345 of 367

Reactivating spot black (#2) printing

While the spot black (#2) grace period is active, the status bar on the Run Mail screen will display an alert with the option to reactivate spot black (#2) printing.

Spot black (#2) printing can only be reactivated from the Run Mail screen.

- 1. Select Reactivate Spot K.
- 2. Select Yes, proceed.
- 3. Follow the prompts to install the ink cartridge and reconfigure the system.



Warning!

Do no open any covers unless prompted to do so. Opening covers out of turn or otherwise interfering with the system will result in a series of error messages that may require the system to be restarted.

- 4. Once the system has been reconfigured, you will be prompted to print test patterns on tape. Select **Ready**.
- 5. Select Tape.
- 6. Check the test pattern.
 - If the solid lines of the test sample are unbroken, select Image is OK Done.
 - If the test pattern has missing or incomplete lines, select Not OK Clean print head. Once
 the cleaning operation completes, you will be prompted to print another test pattern. If the
 pattern still has broken or missing lines, you may need to replace the ink cartridge or print
 head.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 346 of 367

14 - Troubleshooting

In this section

How to resolve envelope feeding issues	348
How to resolve envelope sealing issues	355
How to resolve tape feeding issues	357
How to resolve printing issues	360
How to resolve postage refill issues	361
How to resolve touchscreen response issues	362
Contacting Pitney Bowes	363

How to resolve envelope feeding issues

Description: More than one envelope is feeding.

Possible Cause	Solution
Too many envelopes are on the feed deck; envelopes are not stacked properly on the feed deck.	 Remove some of the envelopes and test with a smaller stack. Slant the envelopes slightly to the left (shingled).
Thickness adjustment knob setting is incorrect; envelopes are too thick or thin for the selected thickness adjustment knob setting.	Adjust the thickness adjustment knob to correspond to the envelope thickness.

Description: Envelope stoppage is occurring.

Possible Cause	Solution
Sealed envelopes are being fed when the sealer is on.	 Clear the envelope stoppage. Change the sealing method to "Sealer off".
Envelope dimensions are outside of acceptable range.	 Clear the envelope stoppage. Use envelopes that meet the acceptable dimensions.
Moistener pad assembly is not installed properly; there is a slight gap between the assembly and the feed deck.	 Clear the envelope stoppage. Remove the moistener pad assembly and slide it back into place.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 348 of 367

Possible Cause	Solution
Larger envelopes are being fed with the shorter edge first (portrait orientation).	 Clear the envelope stoppage. Set the default feeder speed to Reduced.
Envelopes are skewing, and stopping in the feeder area. OR	If shearing and stoppages continue to occur, seal the envelopes prior to running mail and continue to run in slow speed mode.
Envelopes are shearing, and stopping in the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) transport area.	If sealing the envelope prior to the mail run does not resolve the issue, print tapes.
	In addition, ensure that the side guide is properly adjusted and maintained throughout the entire mail run.

Description: Envelopes are not feeding.

Possible Cause	Solution
The crease on the folded contents of the envelopes is not sharp enough, which results in "puffy" envelopes.	Be sure to compress all "puffy" envelopes before placing them on the feed deck.
 When not under compression from the transport drive, "puffy" mail can exceed the acceptable thickness dimension. "Puffy" envelopes often pop open the envelope flap. When placed on the feed deck, the popped flap lifts the body of the envelope off of the rollers; contact with the rollers is required to feed the envelope. Also, the stack tends to tilt forward and produces an unstable stack. 	 Place the envelope on a flat surface. Hold down one edge of the envelope and run the other hand across the face while applying pressure. The goal is to flatten the mail piece by creasing the contents. Once you have flattened all of the envelopes, run the job again.
The stack of envelopes is leaning away from the feeder. (This often happens when running shorter pieces of mail.)	Limit the stack height to 2 inches (50.8 mm).

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 349 of 367

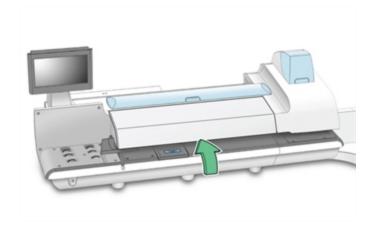
Possible Cause	Solution
Too many envelopes are on the feed deck; envelopes are too heavy.	 Remove some of the envelopes and test with a smaller stack. (This will reduce the weight of the mail.)
	Adjust the <i>side guide</i> if necessary.
	If the feeding issue persists, restart your system.

How to clear an envelope stoppage

Envelope stoppages can occur in the feeder area, WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) area or printer area of your mailing system. When an envelope stoppage occurs, an error message will display indicating the area where the envelope has stopped.

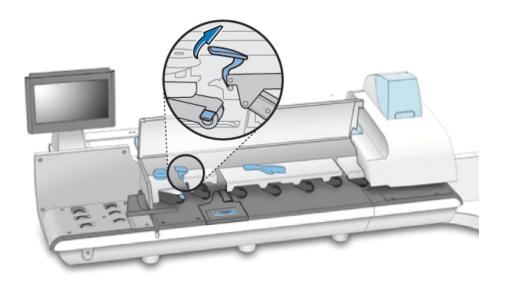
Clearing an envelope stoppage in the feeder area

1. Lift the feed cover.

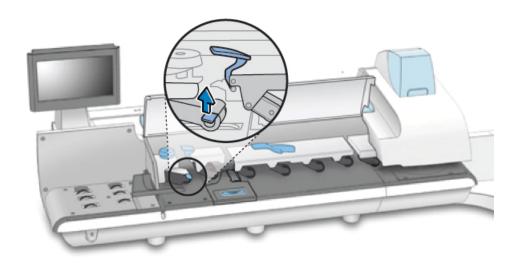


Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 350 of 367

2. Pull up on the top release lever.



3. Lift up the lower release lever and remove the envelope.



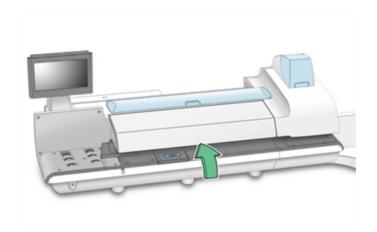
Note:Depending on how badly the envelope is damaged, you may need to replace it.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 351 of 367

- 4. Make sure the feed deck is clear and the lower release lever is down.
- 5. Push down on the top release lever until it snaps into place.
- 6. Close the feed cover.
- 7. Select **Resume printing** to continue processing mail.

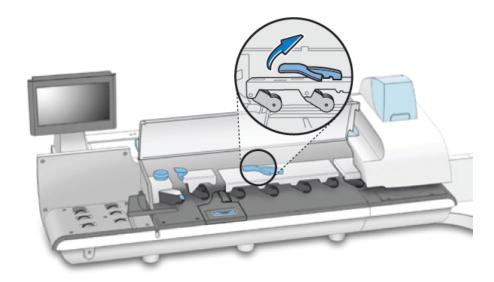
Clearing an envelope stoppage in the WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) area

1. Lift the feed cover.



Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 352 of 367

2. Lift up the W-O-W® transport release lever and remove the envelope.



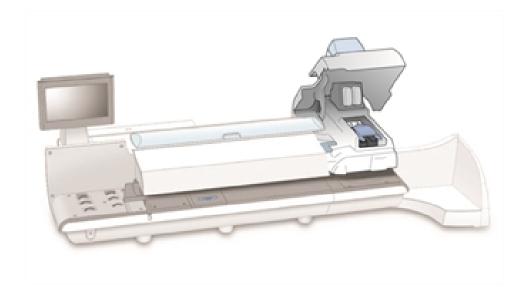
Note:Depending on how badly the envelope is damaged, you may need to replace it.

- 3. Make sure the W-O-W® deck is clear and the release lever is down.
- 4. Close the feed cover.
- 5. Select **Resume printing** to continue processing mail.

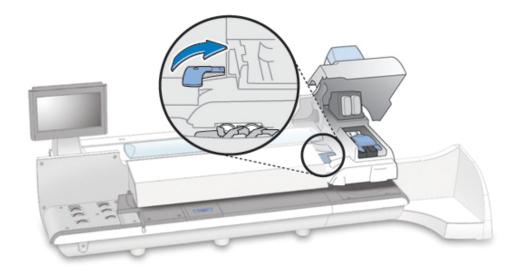
Clearing an envelope stoppage in the printer area

1. Open the printer cover.

Pitney BowesConnect+ Series Operator GuideApril, 2016Page 353 of 367



2. Lift up on the printer transport release lever and remove the envelope.



Note:Depending on how badly the envelope is damaged, you may need to replace it.

- 3. Make sure the printer deck is clear and the release lever is down.
- 4. Close the printer cover.
- 5. Select **Resume printing** to continue processing mail.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 354 of 367

How to resolve envelope sealing issues

Description: Envelope(s) not sealing or not sealing properly.

Possible Cause	Solution
No E-Z Seal® Sealing Solution in the envelope sealant bottle, or bottle is placed incorrectly.	Remove the envelope sealant bottle and reposition or refill.
Moistener pad assembly is dirty or worn.	Clean or replace the moistener pad assembly.
Moistener pad assembly is not installed properly; there is a slight gap between the assembly and the feed deck.	Remove the moistener pad assembly and slide it back into place.
(Connect+ 500W / SendPro™ P1500, Connect+ 1000, and Connect+ 2000systems only.)	
Envelopes are not positioned on the feed deck correctly, or side guide is out too far.	Ensure that the envelopes are prepared and placed on the feed deck correctly.
Envelope flap dimensions are not within acceptable range.	Use envelopes that meet the flap depth dimensions for sealing.
System is not filling with E-Z Seal® Sealing Solution (Connect+ 3000 systems only.)	 Check that there is enough E-Z Seal® sealing solution in the envelope sealant bottle. Refill if necessary.
	Re-install the envelope sealant bottle. Hold the bottle up straight as you re-install.
	Remove or lift the moistener pad assembly to see if trough has filled with sealant.
	 If the trough does not feel with sealant, remove the wick. Let the trough fill and reinstall the wick.
	If this becomes a regular occurrence, replace the wick.

Description: Leading edge (first half) of envelope is not sealing; trailing edge envelope (second half) is getting wet.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 355 of 367

Possible Cause	Solution
There is a obstruction in the moistener pad assembly area.	Check that there is enough E-Z Seal® sealing solution in the envelope sealant bottle.
	Remove or lift the moistener pad assembly. Verify

• Check the envelopes, and ensure that the contents are tamped to the upper right hand corner.

the small reservoir.

that there is no interference with the pad, that the pad is wet and that there is E-Z Seal® solution in

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 356 of 367

How to resolve tape feeding issues

Description: Tape stoppage is occurring.

Possible Cause	Solution
 Adhesive is left on the leading edge of the new tap roll. The leading edge of the tape is rolled or folded under the tape roller. 	 If necessary, remove the tape roll. Clear the tape stoppage. Re-install the tape roll.

Description: System is not wetting gummed tape.

Possible Cause	Solution
Tape moistener brush is dry due to air block in tubing.	Remove the tape sealant bottle and re-install. Repeat as necessary until tape moistener brush becomes wet.

Description: Tape button is not available on the Run Mail screen.

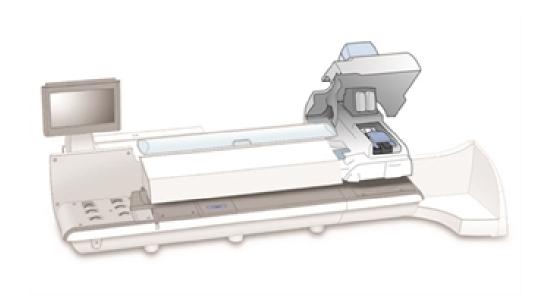
Possible Cause	Solution
You have selected a mode (such as WEIGH-ON-THE-WAY® (W-O-W®) mode) that requires mail be fed though the mailing system.	Change the weighing method.

How to clear a tape stoppage

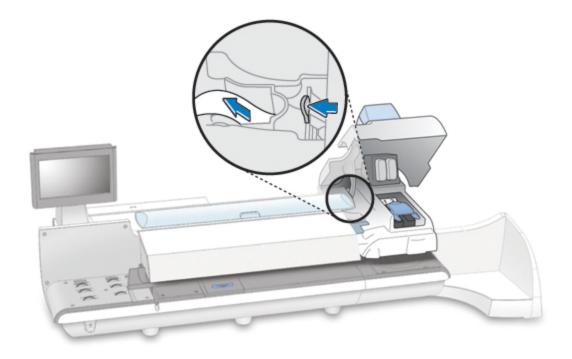
Tape stoppages can occur while the tape is feeding from the feeder area to the printer area of your mailing system. When an tape stoppage occurs, an error message will display.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 357 of 367

1. Lift the printer cover.



2. Press the blue tape lever to the left and remove the stopped tape.



Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 358 of 367

Troubleshooting

- 3. Close the printer cover.
- 4. Select **Resume printing** to continue printing tapes.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 359 of 367

How to resolve printing issues

Description: No postage is printing.

Possible Cause	Solution
You are running a seal only job.	Select a different job.

Description: Indicia is printing at an angle on the envelope.

Possible Cause	Solution
Envelope is skewing on the feed deck.	Ensure the thickness adjustment knob is adjusted to correspond to the envelope thickness.
	Move the side guide close to, but not touching, the envelope.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 360 of 367

How to resolve postage refill issues

Description: Postage refill cannot be completed.

Possible Cause	Solution
Account balance too low. You do not have enough money available for the selected refill amount.	If you are refilling your meter manually, you need to change the refill amount you have selected.
 The requested refill amount is greater than the amount your meter can hold. 	
 The requested refill amount is greater than the maximum refill allowed. 	
The requested refill amount is too low.	
Refill amount is not in \$1.00 increments.	
The connection to IntelliLink® has been dropped.	Try refilling your meter again.
You have a graphics and permit-only printing system.	Graphics and permit-only printing systems do not print postage. Postage refills are not required on these systems.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 361 of 367

How to resolve touchscreen response issues

Description: Touchscreen is not responding to touch commands, or is not responding at all.

Possible Cause	Solution
The touchscreen needs to be calibrated.	Calibrate the touchscreen.
Cable for touch capability may not be attached properly to the touchscreen (wiggled out of place).	Ensure the cable is properly attached to the touchscreen.
If you have upgraded to the 15 inch display, but did not swap out the power cables, the touchscreen will shut down approximately 30 minutes after power up.	Ensure appropriate power supply cable is being used.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 362 of 367

Contacting Pitney Bowes

Refer to the product identifier label on the bottom left corner of the *feeder cover* for Pitney Bowes contact information.

Remote System Assistance

If you are unable to correct a problem with your Connect+ Series system, the Pitney Bowes Support Center can instruct you on providing remote access. Once you provide authorization, the center can connect to your system and troubleshoot the problem.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 363 of 367

Glossary

Α

Automatic Meter Refill

A feature that allows you determine the amount of postage you want transferred to your meter during each refill and you choose the dollar amount at which you want a refill to occur. When the postage balance in the meter drops to the amount you have set as the low funds value, the meter automatically downloads the amount you set.

C

Carrier

The service that delivers your mail such as the United States Postal Service (USPS®) or Federal Express.

Certified Mail

Certified Mail is a service offered by the United States Postal Service® for a fee in addition to postage. Sending Certified Mail provides a delivery record that the Postal Service keeps for two years. You can choose the Return Receipt service when you use Certified Mail. For an additional fee the Return Receipt assures that you have legal proof of receipt of the communication: The Postal Service sends the green return receipt postcard back to you, the sender. This is a very useful tool for collecting funds, recovering checks and making legal notifications. A return receipt for Certified Mail serves as a legal document proving the date and time

when the recipient took possession of the mail piece.

D

Default Job

The default job is the most commonly used job on your mailing system. It is automatically selected whenever you restart your mailing system.

Default Refill Amount

The default refill option that appears when manually refilling your meter. When the automatic meter refill feature is enabled, the default refill amount is the dollar value of the automatic refill for postage.

Default Timeout

The default job timeout specifies how much time you want to allow the system to remain idle before it returns to the default job setting. You can set this timeout for 1 minute to 4 hours, in 1 minute increments

Delivery Confirmation

Delivery Confirmation allows you to verify the date and time of delivery of your mail pieces or, if the delivery was unsuccessful, the date and time of the delivery attempt. The service is currently available for First Class Mail packages, Priority Mail and Package Services parcels, which include Parcel Post, Library, Media Mail and Bound Printed Matter. You may combine Delivery Confirmation with other services such as COD, insured mail, registered mail, parcel airlift (PAL) or special handling. There is no

charge for Delivery Confirmation when you ship by Priority Mail and provide an electronic file to the Postal Service.

Differential Weighing

The weighing method that allows you to put all of the mail on the scale, then remove each piece one at time. As you remove each piece, the system calculates the weight and prints postage automatically to tape. This saves time by eliminating the need to place each piece individually on the scale.

Ε

E-Z Seal® Sealing Solution

The envelope moistening solution recommended for your mailing system. You can order E-Z Seal® sealing solution from the Pitney Bowes Supply Line™.

ENERGY STAR® Shutdown Timeout

If your system is equipped with the **ENERGY STAR it will automatically** shutdown after it has been inactive for 40 minutes. You must restart your system to be able to perform operations again - whether your system timed-out during the day or overnight. This restart process normally takes several minutes. The 40 minute timeout period is required to meet ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency.

F

Funds

The amount of money in your Postage meter (Postal Security Device - PSD).

Funds Available

The amount of money available for postage on your mailing system.

Funds Used

The amount of money used for postage since the mailing system was first installed.

Ink Cartridge

Cartridge containing the ink used to print on an envelope or tape. There is postal (red) and spot (black) ink.

J

Job

A collection of mailing system settings you select and a name that are stored within the mailing system's memory for easy recall.

Κ

Key in Postage

The postage mode to use if you know what the correct amount of postage is for your mail and you intend to apply this postage to each piece.

Low Funds Value

The dollar amount that becomes the trigger for the automatic refill. When your postage meter reaches this level, the automatic refill will be initiated (the next time your system powers down or goes to sleep.)

Low Funds Warning Value

Value at which the mailing system warns you that the funds remaining in the meter are getting low.

М

Manual Weight Entry

A weighing method that allows you to enter the weight of an item that you weighed on a separate scale. This is useful for items that exceed the weight capacity of the attached scale or mailings that are always the same weight.

Meter Stamp

Postage stamp printed directly on a piece of mail or tape using a meter device in place of traditional glue or adhesive affixed stamps. This type of postage requires a special form of indicia called an "information based indicia" (IBI). The US Postal Service's IBI Program (IBIP) is the program that makes printing of postage by a meter device possible.

Mixed Mail

Mail consisting of varying lengths and widths.

Ν

Non-postal Job

A job that allows you to print graphic ads, text messages (including return addresses), date and time the mail piece was received, and date and postage corrections. Non-postal jobs do not print postage.

Ρ

Postage by Phone® System

The Pitney Bowes system that allows you to purchase postage remotely and download it to your mailing system.

Postal Inscriptions

Postal inscriptions are text printed on the envelope to identify to the Post Office which class of service should be used

Postal Job

A job that prints postage.

Postal Security Device (PSD)

The postage meter on your mailing system is a Postal Security Device (PSD) that incorporates the latest technology approved by the United States Postal Service to secure funds. This technology eliminates the need to perform physical inspections thereby making the system easier and more convenient to use. The PSD contains the funds and performs all of the calculations necessary to print meter stamps that comply with the latest USPS standards.

S

Shape Based Rating

Shape based rates are USPS® rates that are based on the weight and dimensions (thickness, length, width) of the mail piece. When shape based rating is used, the mailing system determines the size and weight of the mail and automatically selects the appropriate rate.

Signature Confirmation

The USPS also offers a signature proof of delivery service—Signature Confirmation. This provides mailers with the text name of the recipient, along with the date, time and ZIP Code. This service is currently available for First Class Mail packages, Priority Mail, and Package Services parcels which include Parcel Post, Library, Media Mail and Bound Printed Matter. For security purposes, digitized signatures are not publicly displayed on the web site. You can get actual signatures from the USPS by fax or mail. This service meets the needs of mailers who require a signature for high-value shipments, or who are specifically concerned with avoiding fraud. You may combine Signature Confirmation with special services. As an add-on service to Delivery Confirmation, there is an additional cost when you upload (send) the transaction using your mailing system.

Т

Tape

Tape or label material on which reports or meter stamps are printed when a piece of mail is too large or small, or too fragile to run through the mailing system.

u

USPS Mailer ID

This 9-digit number is required when using Electronic Return Receipt. To get this number, you need to submit

Form 5053, Bulk Proof of Delivery to the USPS.

USPS®

The Unites States Postal Service.

W

Weigh-on-the-Way™ (WOW)

A mail weighing mode that weighs mixed mail as it passes along the feed deck and applies the appropriate postage.

WOW First Piece Only

A weighing method used for mail pieces that are identical (same size and number of sheets). The system weighs the first piece of mail to be fed and calculates the postage. The rest of the stack will be posted with the same postage as the first piece.

Pitney Bowes Connect+ Series Operator Guide April, 2016 Page 367 of 367